Nikon

DIGITAL CAMERA

D700

User's Manual

En

Where to Find It

Find what you're looking for from:

The Q&A Index → pp. iv–ix

Know what you want to do but don't know the function name? Find it from the "question and answer" index.

The Table of Contents → pp. x–xvii

Find items by function or menu name.

The Quick Start Guide → pp. 22–23

A brief guide for those who want to get started taking pictures right away.

The Index → pp. 438–443

Search by key word.

Error Messages → pp. 409–416

If a warning is displayed in the viewfinder or monitor, find the solution here.

Troubleshooting → pp. 402–408

Camera behaving unexpectedly? Find the solution here.

⚠ For Your Safety

Before using the camera for the first time, read the safety instructions in "For Your Safety" (pg. xviii).

Digitutor

Digitutor, a series of "watch and learn" manuals in movie form, is available from the following website:

http://www.nikondigitutor.com/index_eng.html

Package Contents

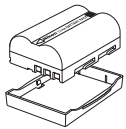
Be sure all items listed here were included with your camera. *Memory cards are sold separately*.

- D700 digital camera (pg. 3)

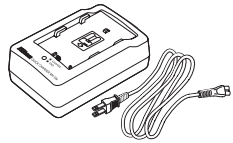
- Body cap (pp. 36, 388)

- BM-9 LCD monitor cover (pg. 21)

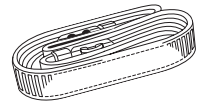
- EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion battery with terminal cover (pp. 32, 34)



- MH-18a quick charger with power cable (pg. 32)

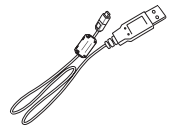


- AN-D700 strap (pg. 21)



- EG-D100 video cable (pg. 255)

- UC-E4 USB cable (pp. 238, 245)



- BS-1 accessory shoe cover (pg. 377)

- Warranty
- *User's Manual* (this guide)
- *Quick Guide*
- *Software Installation Guide*
- Software Suite CD-ROM
- Registration card (U. S. A. only)

Symbols and Conventions

To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:

☑	This icon marks cautions; information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.
✎	This icon marks notes; information that should be read before using the camera.

Menu items, options, and messages displayed in the camera monitor are shown in **bold**.

✎ **Trademark Information**

Macintosh, Mac OS, and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks, or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. CompactFlash is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation. HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC. PictBridge is a trademark. All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

D700

Introduction

Tutorial

Image Recording Options

Focus

Release Mode

ISO Sensitivity

Exposure

White Balance

Image Enhancement

Flash Photography

Other Shooting Options

More About Playback

Connections

Menu Guide

Technical Notes

Q&A Index

Find what you're looking for using this "question and answer" index.

New Features

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I take pictures in FX format?	Image area	58
How do I take high-quality NEF (RAW) photos?	14-bit NEF (RAW)	68
Can I use the monitor as a viewfinder?	Live view	89
Can I control how photos are processed?	Picture Controls	160
How do I preserve details in shadows and highlights?	Active D-Lighting	179
How do I focus on erratically moving subjects?	3D-tracking	286
How do I tell if the camera is level?	Virtual horizon	99, 346
Can I adjust focus separately for different lenses?	AF fine tune	347
How do I remove dust from the low-pass filter protecting the image sensor?	Clean image sensor	392

Camera Setup

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I focus the viewfinder?	Diopter adjustment control	45
How do I keep the monitor from turning off?	Monitor off delay	297

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I keep the shutter speed and aperture displays from turning off?	Auto meter off	48, 296
Can I display a framing grid in the viewfinder?	Viewfinder grid display	298
How do I set the clock?	World time	39, 334
How do I set the clock for daylight savings time?		
How do I change time zones when I travel?		
How do I adjust monitor brightness for menus or playback?	LCD brightness	332
How do I restore default settings?	Two-button reset	196
How do I restore shooting menu defaults?	Reset shooting menu	271
How do I restore Custom Setting defaults?	Reset custom settings	282
How do I change the self-timer delay?	Self-timer delay	297
How do I turn the speaker off?	Beep	298
Can I reverse the electronic analog exposure display?	Reverse indicators	330
Can I display the menus in a different language?	Language	334
Can I save menu settings for use on a different D700 camera?	Save/load settings	344

Menus and Displays

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I get more information on a menu?	Help	31
How do I use the menus?	Using the menus	26
Can I get quick access to frequently-used settings?	My Menu	364
Can I get quick access to recently-used settings?	Recent settings	368

Question	Key phrase	See page
What do these indicators mean?	Viewfinder, control panel, shooting information display	8, 10, 12
What information is in the shooting information display?		
What does this warning mean?	Error messages and displays	409
How much charge does the battery have left?	Battery level	46
How do I get more information about the battery?	Battery info	340
How do I keep the file number from being reset when I insert a new memory card?	File number sequence	300
How do I reset file numbering to zero?		
How do I clean the camera or lens?	Cleaning the camera	391

Taking Photographs

Question	Key phrase	See page
How many more shots can I take with this card?	Number of exposures remaining	47
How do I take bigger photographs?	Image quality and size	64, 69
How can I get more photos on the memory card?		
Can I control how the camera focuses?	Autofocus	71
Can I choose the focus point?	Focus point	76
How do I take a lot of photographs quickly?	Release mode	84
Can I change the frame advance rate?	Shooting speed	86, 299
Can I shoot a self-portrait?	Self-timer mode	102
Can I take pictures under low light without the flash?	ISO sensitivity	106
Can the ISO sensitivity I choose be adjusted to ensure optimal exposure?	ISO sensitivity auto control	108

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I freeze or blur moving objects?	Exposure mode S (shutter-priority auto)	118
How do I blur background details or keep both foreground and background in focus?	Exposure mode A (aperture-priority auto)	119
Can I set both shutter speed and aperture manually?	Exposure mode M (manual)	121
Can I make photos brighter or darker?	Exposure compensation	128
How do I make a time exposure?	Long time-exposures (bulb)	124
Can I vary exposure or flash level automatically over a series of photos?	Exposure and flash bracketing	131, 315
Can I create multiple copies of a photo using different white balance settings?	White balance bracketing	135, 315
How do I adjust white balance?	White balance	139
Can I take pictures with a flash?	Flash photography, flash mode, red-eye reduction	185
How can I reduce "red-eye"?		188
How can I record multiple shots as a single photograph?	Multiple exposure	198
How do I reduce loss of brightness at the edges of photographs?	Vignette control	276
Can I pick the standard exposure level?	Fine tune optimal exposure	294
How can I reduce blur?	Exposure delay mode	302
Can the flash be used at shutter speeds faster than $^1/_{250}$ s?	Flash sync speed	305
Can I record an NEF copy of a photograph while shooting JPEG images?	+NEF (RAW)	322

Viewing Photographs

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I view my photographs on the camera?	Camera playback	218
Can I view more information about photos?	Photo info	220
Why do parts of my photos blink?	Photo info, highlights	222, 264
How do I get rid of an unwanted photo?	Deleting individual photos	236
Can I delete several photos at once?	Delete	262
Can I zoom in on pictures to make sure they're in focus?	Playback zoom	234
Can I protect photos from accidental deletion?	Protect	235
Can I hide selected photos?	Hide image	263
How do I tell if parts of my photos may be overexposed?	Display mode: highlights	264
How do I tell where the camera focused?	Display mode: focus point	264
Can I view photos as they are taken?	Image review	265
Is there an automatic playback ("slide show") option?	Slide show	266

Retouching Photographs

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I bring out details in shadows in backlit areas or areas outside the range of the flash?	D-Lighting	354
Can I get rid of red eye?	Red-eye correction	355
Can I crop photographs on the camera?	Trim	356
Can I create a monochrome copy of a photograph?	Monochrome	357
Can I create a copy with different colors?	Filter effects	358

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I use the camera to create JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) photographs?	Color balance	358
Can I overlay two photos to make a single image?	Image overlay	359

Viewing or Printing Photographs on Other Devices

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I view my photos on TV?	Television playback	255
Can I view my photos in High Definition?	HDMI	257
How do I copy photos to my computer?	Connecting to a computer	238
How do I print photographs?	Printing photographs	243
Can I print photos without a computer?	Printing via USB	244
Can I print the date on my photographs?	Time stamp	247
How do I order professional prints?	Print set (DPOF)	253

Optional Accessories

Question	Key phrase	See page
What optional flash units (Speedlights) can I use?	Optional flash units	377
What lenses can I use?	Compatible lenses	370
What AC adapters, battery packs, remote cords, and viewfinder accessories are available for my camera?	Other accessories	385
What memory cards can I use?	Approved memory cards	390
What software is available for my camera?	Other accessories	388

Table of Contents

Q&A Index iv
For Your Safety xviii
Notices xxi

Introduction **1**

Overview 2
Getting to Know the Camera 3
Camera Body 3
The Control Panel 8
The Viewfinder Display 10
The Shooting Information Display 12
The Command Dials 16
Quick Start Guide 22

Tutorial **25**

Camera Menus 26
Using Camera Menus 28
Help 31
First Steps 32
Charge the Battery 32
Insert the Battery 34
Attach a Lens 36
Basic Setup 38
Insert a Memory Card 41
Formatting Memory Cards 43
Adjust Viewfinder Focus 45
Basic Photography and Playback 46
Deleting Unwanted Photographs 56

Image Recording Options 57

Image Area ... 58
Image Quality ... 64
Image Size ... 69

Focus 71

Focus Mode ... 72
AF-Area Mode ... 74
Focus Point Selection ... 76
Focus Lock ... 78
Manual Focus ... 81

Release Mode 83

Choosing a Release Mode ... 84
Continuous Mode ... 86
Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View) ... 89
Self-Timer Mode ... 102
Mirror up Mode ... 104

ISO Sensitivity 105

Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually ... 106
Auto ISO Sensitivity Control ... 108

Exposure 111

Metering ... 112
Exposure Mode ... 114
P: Programmed Auto ... 116
S: Shutter-Priority Auto ... 118
A: Aperture-Priority Auto ... 119
M: Manual ... 121

Long Time-Exposures....124
Autoexposure (AE) Lock....126
Exposure Compensation....128
Bracketing....130

White Balance **139**

White Balance Options....140
Fine-Tuning White Balance....143
Choosing a Color Temperature....147
Preset Manual....148

Image Enhancement **159**

Picture Controls....160
Creating Custom Picture Controls....168
Active D-Lighting....179
Color Space....181

Flash Photography **183**

The Built-in Flash....184
Using the Built-in Flash....185
Flash Modes....188
Flash Compensation....190
FV Lock....192

Other Shooting Options **195**

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings....196
Multiple Exposure....198
Interval Timer Photography....203
Non-CPU Lenses....210
Using a GPS Unit....213

More About Playback 217

Full-Frame Playback 218
Photo Information 220
Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback 232
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom 234
Protecting Photographs from Deletion 235
Deleting Individual Photographs 236

Connections 237

Connecting to a Computer 238
- Direct USB Connection 240
- Wireless and Ethernet Networks 242

Printing Photographs 243
- Direct USB Connection 244

Viewing Photographs on TV 255
- Standard Definition Devices 255
- High-Definition Devices 257

Menu Guide 259

▶ The Playback Menu: Managing Images 260
- Delete 262
- Playback Folder 263
- Hide Image 263
- Display Mode 264
- Image Review 265
- After Delete 265
- Rotate Tall 265
- Slide Show 266
- Print Set (DPOF) 267

📷 The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options 268
- Shooting Menu Bank 269
- Reset Shooting Menu 271

Active Folder 272
File Naming 274
Image Quality 274
Image Size 274
Image Area 274
JPEG Compression 275
NEF (RAW) Recording 275
White Balance 275
Set Picture Control 275
Manage Picture Control 275
Color Space 275
Active D-Lighting 276
Vignette Control 276
Long Exp. NR (Long Exposure Noise Reduction) 277
High ISO NR 278
ISO Sensitivity Settings 278
Live View 278
Multiple Exposure 278
Interval Timer Shooting 279
Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings 280
Custom Setting Bank 282
Reset Custom Settings 282
a: Autofocus 283
a1: AF-C Priority Selection 283
a2: AF-S Priority Selection 284
a3: Dynamic AF Area 285
a4: Focus Tracking with Lock-On 287
a5: AF Activation 287
a6: AF Point Illumination 288
a7: Focus Point Wrap-Around 288
a8: AF Point Selection 289
a9: Built-in AF-Assist Illuminator 290
a10: AF-On for MB-D10 291
b: Metering/Exposure 292
b1: ISO Sensitivity Step Value 292
b2: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl. 292
b3: Exp Comp/Fine Tune 292
b4: Easy Exposure Compensation 293

b5: Center-Weighted Area 294
b6: Fine Tune Optimal Exposure 294
c: Timers/AE Lock 296
c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L 296
c2: Auto Meter-off Delay 296
c3: Self-Timer Delay 297
c4: Monitor off Delay 297
d: Shooting/Display 298
d1: Beep 298
d2: Viewfinder Grid Display 298
d3: Screen Tips 298
d4: CL Mode Shooting Speed 299
d5: Max. Continuous Release 299
d6: File Number Sequence 300
d7: Shooting Info Display 301
d8: LCD Illumination 302
d9: Exposure Delay Mode 302
d10: MB-D10 Battery Type 302
d11: Battery Order 304
e: Bracketing/Flash 305
e1: Flash Sync Speed 305
e2: Flash Shutter Speed 308
e3: Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash 309
e4: Modeling Flash 315
e5: Auto Bracketing Set 315
e6: Auto Bracketing (Mode M) 316
e7: Bracketing Order 317
f: Controls 318
f1: ☀ Switch 318
f2: Multi Selector Center Button 318
f3: Multi Selector 319
f4: Photo Info/Playback 320
f5: Assign FUNC. Button 320
f6: Assign Preview Button 324
f7: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button 325
f8: Shutter Speed and Aperture Lock 326
f9: Customize Command Dials 326
f10: Release Button to Use Dial 328
f11: No Memory Card? 329

f12: Reverse Indicators 330
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup 331
Format Memory Card 332
LCD Brightness 332
Clean Image Sensor 332
Lock Mirror up for Cleaning 332
Video Mode 333
HDMI 333
World Time 334
Language 334
Image Comment 335
Auto Image Rotation 336
Dust off Ref Photo 337
Battery Info 340
Wireless Transmitter 341
Image Authentication 342
Copyright Information 343
Save/Load Settings 344
GPS 346
Virtual Horizon 346
Non-CPU Lens Data 346
AF Fine Tune 347
Firmware Version 348
The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies 349
D-Lighting 354
Red-Eye Correction 355
Trim 356
Monochrome 357
Filter Effects 358
Color Balance 358
Image Overlay 359
Side-by-Side Comparison 362
My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu 364
Displaying Recent Settings 368

Compatible Lenses 370
Optional Flash Units (Speedlights) 377
Other Accessories 385
Caring for the Camera 391
Storage 391
Cleaning 391
The Low-Pass Filter 392
"Clean Now" 392
"Clean at Startup/Shutdown" 393
Manual Cleaning 395
Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions 398
Troubleshooting 402
Error Messages 409
Appendix 417
Specifications 428
Index 438

For Your Safety

To prevent damage to your Nikon product or injury to yourself or to others, read the following safety precautions in their entirety before using this equipment. Keep these safety instructions where all those who use the product will read them.

The consequences that could result from failure to observe the precautions listed in this section are indicated by the following symbol:

> ⚠ This icon marks warnings. To prevent possible injury, read all warnings before using this Nikon product.

■■ *WARNINGS*

⚠ **Keep the sun out of the frame**
Keep the sun well out of the frame when shooting backlit subjects. Sunlight focused into the camera when the sun is in or close to the frame could cause a fire.

⚠ **Do not look at the sun through the viewfinder**
Viewing the sun or other strong light source through the viewfinder could cause permanent visual impairment.

⚠ **Using the viewfinder diopter control**
When operating the viewfinder diopter control with your eye to the viewfinder, care should be taken not to put your finger in your eye accidentally.

⚠ **Turn off immediately in the event of malfunction**
Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the equipment or AC adapter (available separately), unplug the AC adapter and remove the battery immediately, taking care to avoid burns. Continued operation could result in injury. After removing the battery, take the equipment to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Do not disassemble**
Touching the product's internal parts could result in injury. In the event of malfunction, the product should be repaired only by a qualified technician. Should the product break open as the result of a fall or other accident, remove the battery and/or AC adapter and then take the product to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Do not use in the presence of flammable gas**
Do not use electronic equipment in the presence of flammable gas, as this could result in explosion or fire.

⚠ **Keep out of reach of children**
Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury.

⚠ **Do not place the strap around the neck of an infant or child**
Placing the camera strap around the neck of an infant or child could result in strangulation.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling batteries**
Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries for use in this product:

- Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
- Do not short or disassemble the battery.
- Be sure the product is off before replacing the battery. If you are using an AC adapter, be sure it is unplugged.
- Do not attempt to insert the battery upside down or backwards.
- Do not expose the battery to flame or to excessive heat.
- Do not immerse in or expose to water.
- Replace the terminal cover when transporting the battery. Do not transport or store the battery with metal objects such as necklaces or hairpins.
- Batteries are prone to leakage when fully discharged. To avoid damage to the product, be sure to remove the battery when no charge remains.
- When the battery is not in use, attach the terminal cover and store in a cool, dry place.
- The battery may be hot immediately after use or when the product has been used on battery power for an extended period. Before removing the battery turn the camera off and allow the battery to cool.
- Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the battery, such as discoloration or deformation.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling the quick charger**

- Keep dry. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Dust on or near the metal parts of the plug should be removed with a dry cloth. Continued use could result in fire.
- Do not handle the power cable or go near the charger during thunderstorms. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.
- Do not damage, modify, or forcibly tug or bend the power cable. Do not place it under heavy objects or expose it to heat or flame. Should the insulation be damaged and the wires become exposed, take the power cable to a Nikon-authorized service representative for inspection. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not handle the plug or charger with wet hands. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.

⚠ **Use appropriate cables**

When connecting cables to the input and output jacks, use only the cables provided or sold by Nikon for the purpose to maintain compliance with product regulations.

⚠ **CD-ROMs**

CD-ROMs containing software or manuals should not be played back on audio CD equipment. Playing CD-ROMs on an audio CD player could cause hearing loss or damage the equipment.

⚠ **Observe caution when using the flash**

- Using the camera with the flash in close contact with the skin or other objects could cause burns.
- Using the flash close to the subject's eyes could cause temporary visual impairment. Particular care should be observed when photographing infants, when the flash should be no less than one meter (39 in.) from the subject.

⚠ **Avoid contact with liquid crystal**

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent the liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.

Notices

- No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon's prior written permission.
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
- Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

Notices for Customers in the U.S.A.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

CAUTIONS

Modifications

The FCC requires the user be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Interface Cables

Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Notice for Customers in the State of California

WARNING: Handling the cord on this product may expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. *Wash hands after handling.*

Nikon Inc., 1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A.
Tel.: 631-547-4200

Notices for Customers in Canada

CAUTION

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

ATTENTION

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Symbol for Separate Collection in European Countries

This symbol indicates that this product is to be collected separately. The following apply only to users in European countries:

- This product is designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.

Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera, or other device may be punishable by law.

- **Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced**

  Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped "Sample."

  The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

  Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction or unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

  The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

- **Cautions on certain copies and reproductions**

  The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company. Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

- **Comply with copyright notices**

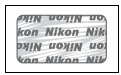
  The copying or reproduction of copyrighted creative works such as books, music, paintings, woodcuts, prints, maps, drawings, movies, and photographs is governed by national and international copyright laws. Do not use this product for the purpose of making illegal copies or to infringe copyright laws.

Disposing of Data Storage Devices
Please note that deleting images or formatting memory cards or other data storage devices does not completely erase the original image data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered from discarded storage devices using commercially available software, potentially resulting in the malicious use of personal image data. Ensuring the privacy of such data is the user's responsibility.

Before discarding a data storage device or transferring ownership to another person, erase all data using commercial deletion software, or format the device and then completely refill it with images containing no private information (for example, pictures of empty sky). Be sure to also replace any pictures selected for preset manual. Care should be taken to avoid injury when physically destroying data storage devices.

Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories
Nikon cameras are designed to the highest standards and include complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including battery chargers, batteries, AC adapters, and flash accessories) certified by Nikon specifically for use with this Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.

The use of non-Nikon electronic accessories could damage the camera and may void your Nikon warranty. The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not bearing the Nikon holographic seal shown at right could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.



For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact a local authorized Nikon dealer.

Before Taking Important Pictures

Before taking pictures on important occasions (such as at weddings or before taking the camera on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

Life-Long Learning

As part of Nikon's "Life-Long Learning" commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available on-line at the following sites:

- **For users in the U.S.A.**: ***http://www.nikonusa.com/***
- **For users in Europe and Africa**: ***http://www.europe-nikon.com/support***
- **For users in Asia, Oceania, and the Middle East**: ***http://www.nikon-asia.com/***

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the following URL for contact information: ***http://imaging.nikon.com/***

Introduction

This chapter covers information you will need to know before using the camera, including the names of camera parts.

Overview ..... **pg. 2**

Getting to Know the Camera ..... **pg. 3**

Camera Body ..... pg. 3
The Control Panel ..... pg. 8
The Viewfinder Display ..... pg. 10
The Shooting Information Display ..... pg. 12
The Command Dials ..... pg. 16

Quick Start Guide ..... **pg. 22**

Overview

Thank you for your purchase of a Nikon single-lens reflex (SLR) digital camera. Please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly to get the most from the camera, and keep them where they will be read by all those who use the product.

☑ Use Only Nikon Brand Accessories

Only Nikon brand accessories certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within its operational and safety requirements. THE USE OF NON-NIKON ACCESSORIES COULD DAMAGE YOUR CAMERA AND MAY VOID YOUR NIKON WARRANTY.

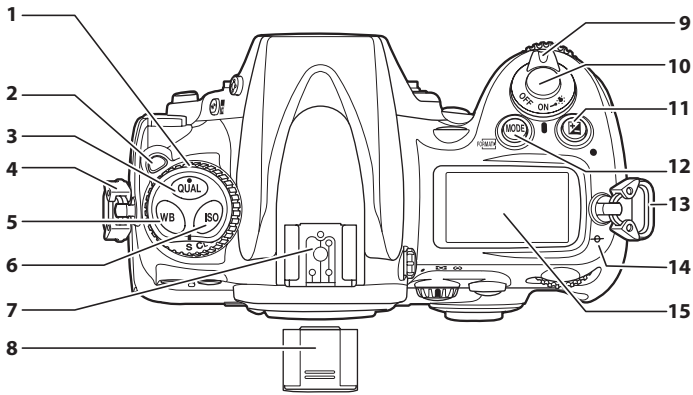
☑ Servicing the Camera and Accessories

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or a Nikon-authorized service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional flash units, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

Getting to Know the Camera

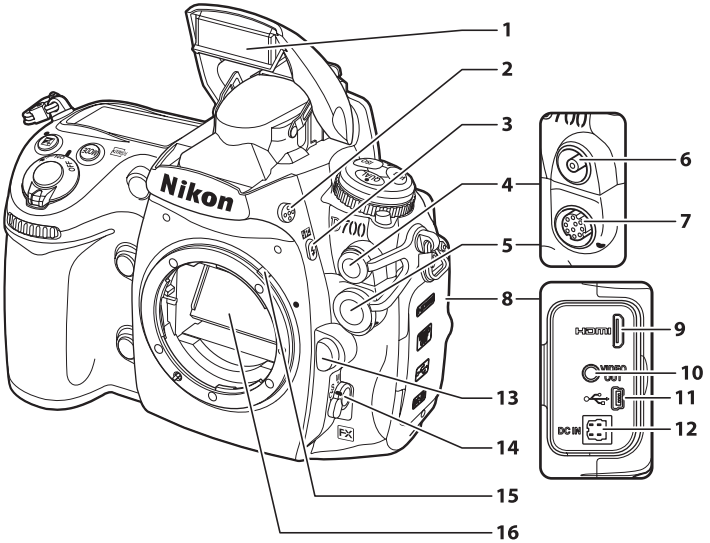
Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

Camera Body

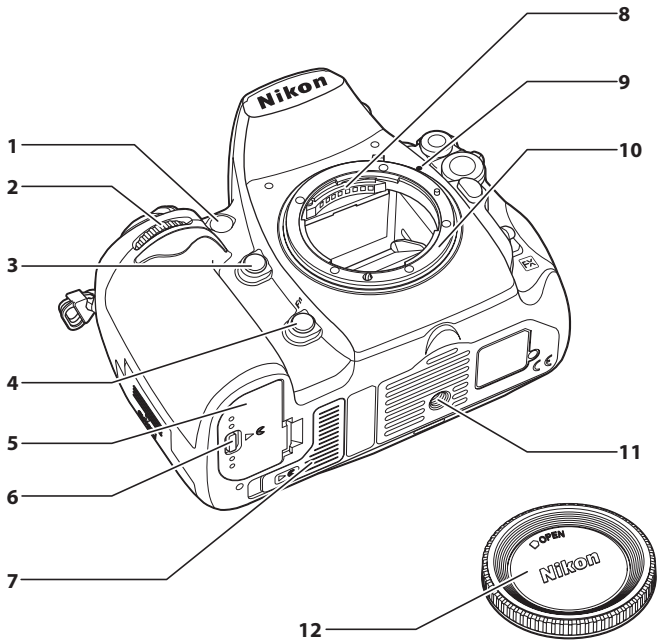


1	Release mode dial 85	**8**	BS-1 accessory shoe cover 377
2	Release mode dial lock release 85	**9**	Power switch 46
3	**QUAL** (image quality/size) button ..... 65, 70 Two-button reset button 196	**10**	Shutter-release button 53, 54
4	Eyelet for camera strap 21	**11**	⊠ (exposure compensation) button ..... 128 Two-button reset button 196
5	**WB** (white balance) button 141, 146, 147	**12**	**MODE** (exposure mode) button ..... 115 FORMAT (format) button 43
6	**ISO** (ISO sensitivity) button 106	**13**	Eyelet for camera strap 21
7	Accessory shoe (for optional flash unit) 384	**14**	Focal plane mark (⊖) 82
		15	Control panel 8

Camera Body (Continued)

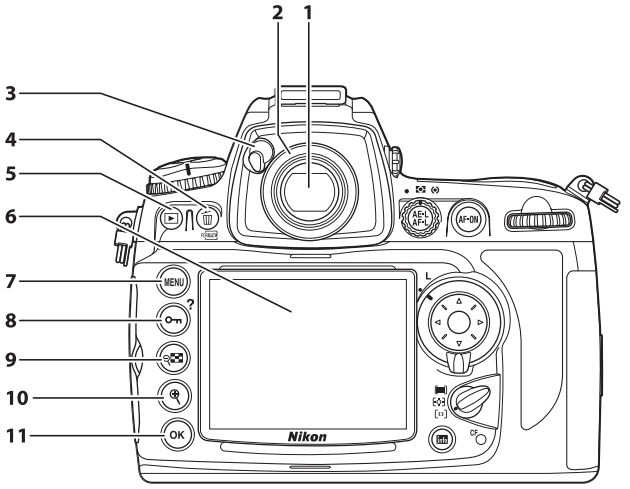


1 Built-in flash 185
2 Flash pop-up button 185
3 ⚡ (flash mode) button 185
⚡/± (flash compensation) button 190
4 Flash sync terminal cover 384
5 Ten-pin remote terminal cover 213, 389
6 Flash sync terminal 384
7 Ten-pin remote terminal 213, 389
8 Connector cover 240, 255
9 HDMI mini-pin connector 257
10 Video connector 255
11 USB connector 240, 245
12 DC-IN connector for optional AC adapter EH-5a or EH-5 385
13 Lens release button 37
14 Focus-mode selector 72, 81
15 Meter coupling lever 430
16 Mirror 89, 104, 395

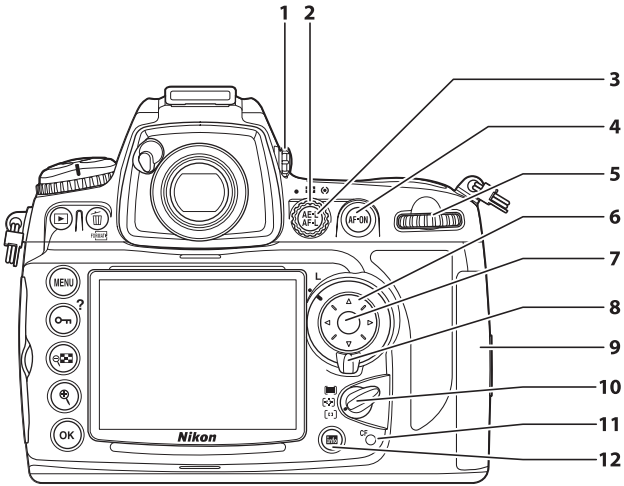


1 AF-assist illuminator 290
Self-timer lamp 103
Red-eye reduction lamp..... 188
2 Sub-command dial..... 16
3 Depth-of-field preview button 115, 324
4 **Fn** button 131, 135, 193, 320
5 Battery-chamber cover 34
6 Battery-chamber cover latch 34
7 Contact cover for optional MB-D10 battery pack 385
8 CPU contacts
9 Mounting index 36
10 Lens mount..... 82
11 Tripod socket
12 Body cap 388

Camera Body (Continued)

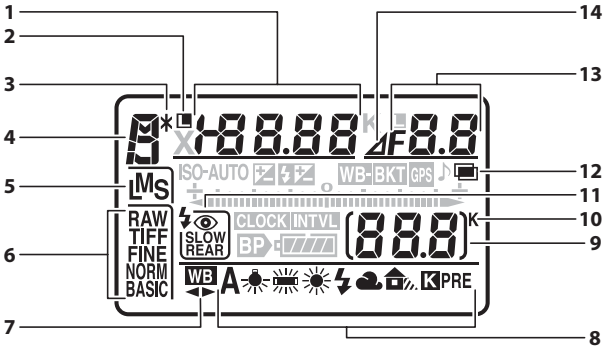


1 Viewfinder 45
2 Viewfinder eyepiece.....45
3 Eyepiece shutter lever.....45
4 🗑 (delete) button..... 56, 236
FORMAT (format) button.....43
5 ▶ (playback) button 55, 218
6 Monitor..... 55, 89, 218
7 MENU (menu) button..... 26, 259
8 (protect) button.....235
? (help) button 31
9 (thumbnail/playback zoom out) button 232
10 (playback zoom in) button.....234
11 OK (OK) button..... 30



1 Diopter adjustment control 45
2 Metering selector..... 113
3 AE-L/AF-L (AE/AF lock) button 78, 79, 325
4 **AF-ON** (AF-ON) button 73, 96
5 Main command dial 16
6 Multi selector.....28
7 Center of multi selector 28
8 Focus selector lock.....76
9 Memory card slot cover.....41
10 AF-area mode selector 74
11 Memory card access lamp 42, 54
12 **info** (information display/quick settings display) button 12

The Control Panel



1 Shutter speed 118, 121
Exposure compensation value 128
Flash compensation value 190
ISO sensitivity 106
White balance fine-tuning 146
Color temperature 147
White balance preset number 157
Number of shots in exposure and flash bracketing sequence 131
Number of shots in WB bracketing sequence 135
Number of intervals for interval timer photography 206
Focal length (non-CPU lenses) 212

2 Shutter speed lock icon 326

3 Flexible program indicator 117

4 Exposure mode 114

5 Image size 70

6 Image quality 65

7 White balance fine-tuning indicator 146

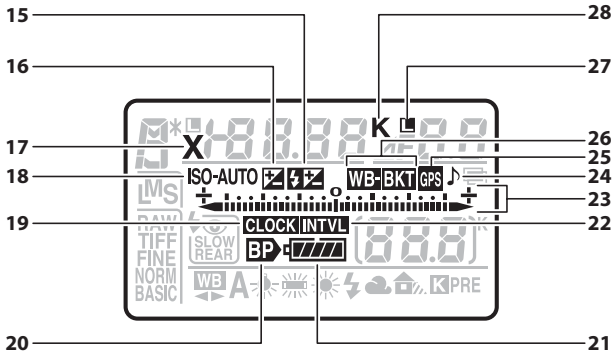
8 White balance 140

9 Number of exposures remaining 47
Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills 87
Capture mode indicator 239
Preset white balance recording indicator 151
Manual lens number 212

10 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 47

11 Flash mode 185

12 Multiple exposure indicator 200



13 Aperture (f-number).....119, 121
Aperture (number of stops).....120, 373
Exposure and flash bracketing increment 132
WB bracketing increment..... 136
Number of shots per interval 206
Maximum aperture (non-CPU lenses) 212

14 Aperture stop indicator....120, 373

15 Flash compensation indicator..... 190

16 Exposure compensation indicator..... 128

17 Flash sync indicator 305

18 ISO sensitivity indicator..... 106
Auto ISO sensitivity indicator..... 108

19 "Clock not set" indicator 40, 410

20 MB-D10 battery indicator 304

21 Battery indicator 46

22 Interval timer indicator..... 206

23 Electronic analog exposure display..... 123
Exposure compensation 128
Exposure and flash bracketing progress indicator..... 131
WB bracketing progress indicator..... 135
Tilt indicator..... 322

24 "Beep" indicator 298

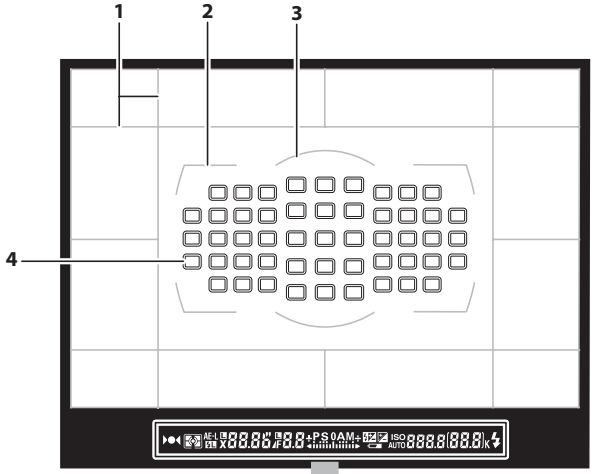
25 GPS connection indicator..... 214

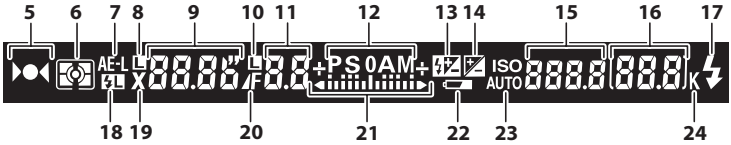
26 Exposure and flash bracketing indicator 131
WB bracketing indicator..... 135

27 Aperture lock icon 326

28 Color temperature indicator..... 147

The Viewfinder Display





1 Framing grid (displayed when **On** is selected for Custom Setting d2; not displayed when **DX format (24 × 16)** is selected for **Image area**; pg. 58) 298
2 AF area brackets 45, 94
3 12-mm reference circle for center-weighted metering ... 112
4 Focus points 76, 289
5 Focus indicator 53, 82
6 Metering 112
7 Autoexposure (AE) lock 126
8 Shutter speed lock icon 326
9 Shutter speed 118, 121
10 Aperture lock icon 326
11 Aperture (f-number) 119, 121
Aperture (number of stops) 120, 373
12 Exposure mode 114
13 Flash compensation indicator 190
14 Exposure compensation indicator 128
15 ISO sensitivity 106
16 Number of exposures remaining 47
Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills ... 53, 87
White balance recording indicator 151
Exposure compensation value 128
Flash compensation value 190
17 Flash-ready indicator 185
18 FV lock indicator 193
19 Flash sync indicator 305
20 Aperture stop indicator 120
21 Electronic analog exposure display 123
Exposure compensation display 128
Tilt indicator 322
22 Battery indicator 46
23 Auto ISO sensitivity indicator 108
24 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 47

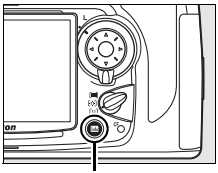
☑ No Battery

When the battery is totally exhausted or no battery is inserted, the display in the viewfinder will dim. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction. The viewfinder display will return to normal when a fully-charged battery is inserted.

☑ The Control Panel and Viewfinder Displays

The brightness of the control panel and viewfinder displays varies with temperature, and the response times of the displays may drop at low temperatures. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

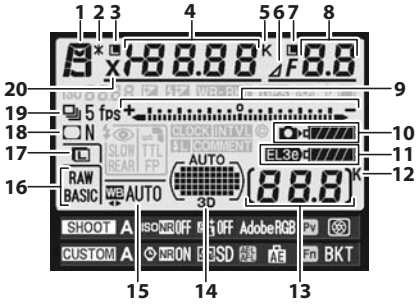
The Shooting Information Display



Shooting information, including shutter speed, aperture, the number of exposures remaining, buffer capacity, and AF-area mode, is displayed in the monitor when the info button is pressed. Press the info button again to change selected settings (pg. 15). To clear shooting information from the monitor, press the info button a third time or press the shutter-release button halfway. At default settings, the monitor will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for about 10 seconds.

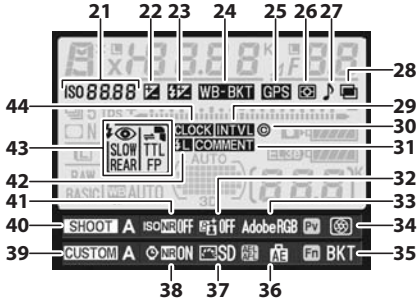
See Also

For information on choosing how long the monitor stays on, see Custom Setting c4 (**Monitor off delay**, pg. 297). For information on changing the color of the lettering in the shooting information display, see Custom Setting d7 (**Shooting info display**, pg. 301).



1 Exposure mode 114
2 Flexible program indicator ... 117
3 Shutter speed lock icon 326
4 Shutter speed 118, 121
Exposure compensation value 128
Flash compensation value 190
Number of shots in bracketing sequence 131, 135
Focal length (non-CPU lenses) 212
Color temperature 147
5 Color temperature indicator 147
6 Aperture stop indicator 120, 373
7 Aperture lock icon 326
8 Aperture (f-number) 119, 121
Aperture (number of stops) 120, 373
Bracketing increment 132, 136
Maximum aperture (non-CPU lenses) 212
9 Electronic analog exposure display 123
Exposure compensation 128
Bracketing progress indicator 131, 135
10 Camera battery indicator 46
11 MB-D10 battery type display 304
MB-D10 battery indicator 303
12 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 47
13 Number of exposures remaining 87
Manual lens number 212
14 Auto-area AF indicator 75
Focus points indicator 76
AF-area mode indicator 75
3D-tracking indicator 75, 286
15 White balance 140
White balance fine-tuning indicator 146
16 Image quality 64
17 Image size 69
18 Vignette control 276
19 Release mode (single frame/ continuous) indicator 84
Continuous shooting speed ... 87
20 Flash sync indicator 305

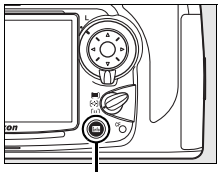
The Shooting Information Display (Continued)

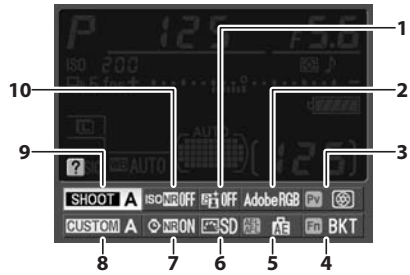


21 ISO sensitivity indicator 106
Auto ISO sensitivity indicator 108
22 Exposure compensation indicator 128
23 Flash compensation indicator 190
24 Exposure and flash bracketing indicator 131
WB bracketing indicator 135
25 GPS connection indicator 214
26 Metering 112
27 "Beep" indicator 298
28 Multiple exposure indicator ... 200
29 Interval timer indicator 206
30 Copyright Information indicator 343
31 Image comment indicator 335
32 Active D-Lighting indicator 180
33 Color space indicator 181
34 Depth-of-field preview button assignment 324
35 **Fn** button assignment 320
36 **AE-L/AF-L** button assignment 325
37 Picture Control indicator 163
38 Long exposure noise reduction indicator 277
39 Custom settings bank 282
40 Shooting menu bank 269
41 High ISO noise reduction indicator 278
42 FV lock indicator 193
43 Flash mode 185, 189
44 "Clock not set" indicator ... 40, 410

■■ *The Quick Settings Display*

To change settings for the items listed below, press the **info** button in the shooting information display. Highlight items using the multi selector and press **OK** to jump to the menu for the highlighted item.





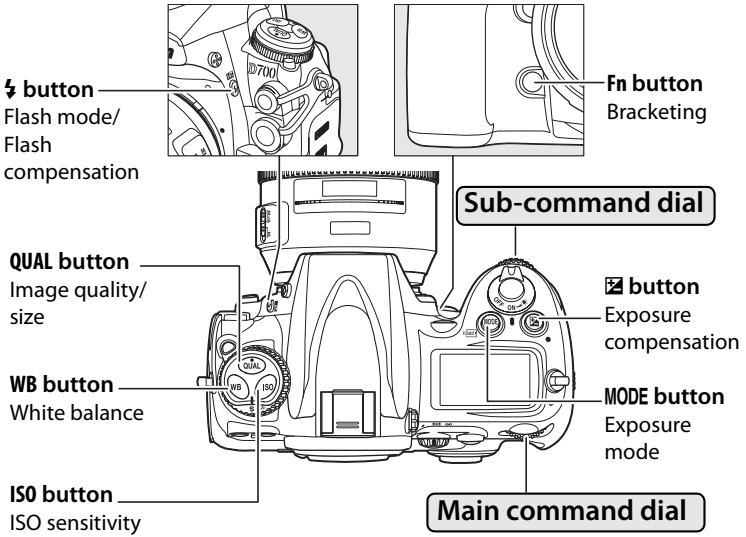
1	Active D-Lighting 180	**6**	Picture Control 162
2	Color space 181	**7**	Long exposure noise reduction 277
3	Depth-of-field preview button assignment 324	**8**	Custom settings bank 282
4	**Fn** button assignment 320	**9**	Shooting menu bank 269
5	**AE-L/AF-L** button assignment 325	**10**	High ISO noise reduction 278

Viewing Button Assignments

PV, Fn, and AE-L/AF-L icons indicate the "button press" function (pg. 320) performed respectively by the depth-of-field preview button, **Fn** button, and **AE-L/AF-L** button. The "button+dials" functions (pg. 323) are indicated by PV, Fn, and AE-L/AF-L icons. If separate functions have been assigned to "button press" and "button + dials," the latter assignment can be viewed by pressing the ? button.

The Command Dials

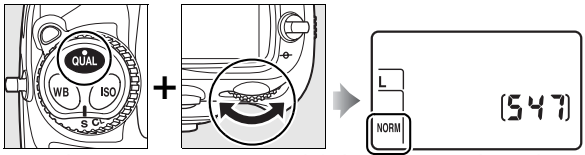
The main- and sub-command dials are used alone or in combination with other controls to adjust a variety of settings.



■■ *Image Quality and Size*

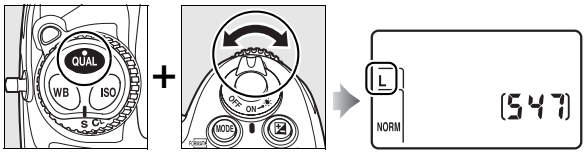
Press the **QUAL** *button* and rotate the command dials.

Set image quality (pg. 65)



QUAL button | Main command dial | Control panel

Choose an image size (pg. 70)

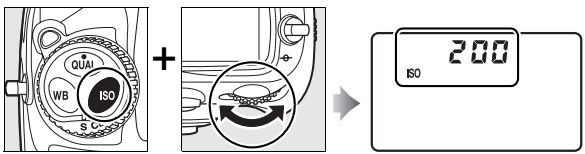


QUAL button | Sub-command dial | Control panel

■■ *ISO Sensitivity*

Press the **ISO** *button* and rotate the main command dial.

Set ISO sensitivity (pg. 106)

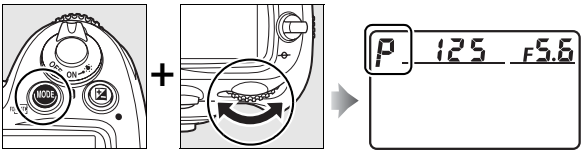


ISO button | Main command dial | Control panel

■■ *Exposure*

Press the **MODE** *button* and rotate the main command dial to choose the exposure mode.

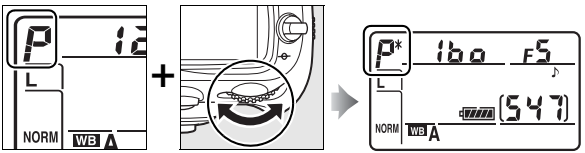
Choose the exposure mode (pg. 114)



MODE button | Main command dial | Control panel

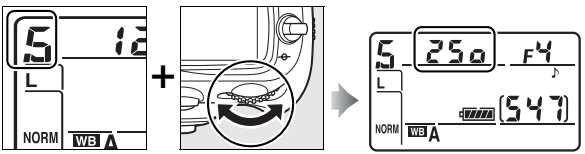
Use the command dials to adjust exposure.

Choose a combination of aperture and shutter speed (exposure mode P; pg. 117)



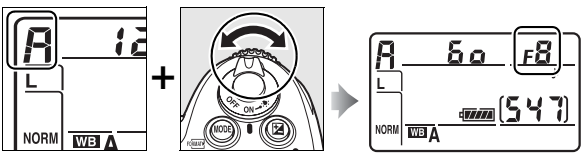
Exposure mode *P* | Main command dial | Control panel

Choose a shutter speed (exposure mode S or M; pp. 118, 121)



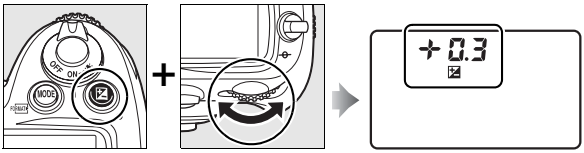
Exposure mode **S** or *M* | Main command dial | Control panel

Choose an aperture (exposure mode A or M; pp. 119, 121)



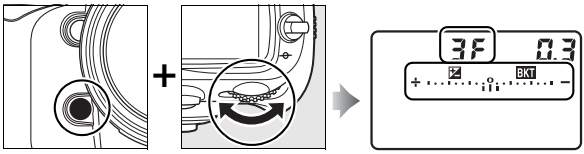
Exposure mode *A* or *M* | Sub-command dial | Control panel

Set exposure compensation (pg. 128)



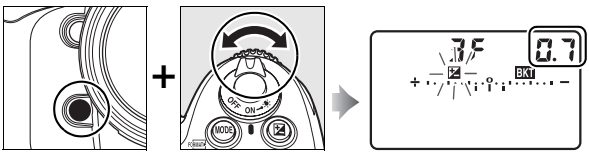
button | Main command dial | Control panel

Activate or cancel bracketing/ select number of shots in bracketing sequence (pp. 131, 134)



Fn button | Main command dial | Control panel

Select bracketing exposure increment (pg. 132)



Fn button | Sub-command dial | Control panel

The Fn Button

Depending on the option selected for Custom Setting f5 (**Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320), the **Fn** button and command dials can be used to adjust bracketing settings (the default option), choose the image area, lock shutter speed and aperture, select shutter speed and aperture in steps of 1 EV, choose pre-specified lens data for non-CPU lenses, or select dynamic-area AF.

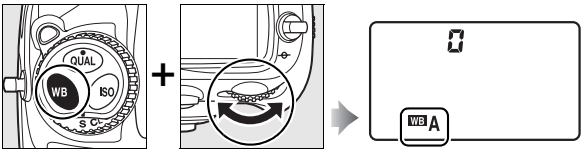
The Depth-of-Field Preview and AE-L/AF-L Buttons

Depending on the options selected for Custom Settings f6 (**Assign preview button**, pg. 324) and f7 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325), the depth-of-field preview and **AE-L/AF-L** buttons can be used with the command dials to perform the same functions as the **Fn** button.

■■ *White Balance*

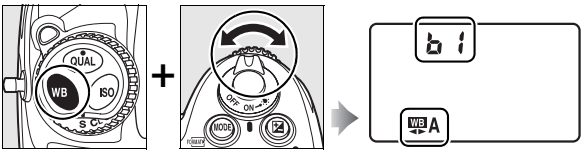
Press the **WB** *button* and rotate the command dials.

Choose a white balance setting (pg. 141)



WB button | Main command dial | Control panel

Fine-tune white balance (pg. 146), set color temperature (pg. 147), or choose a white balance preset (pg. 157)

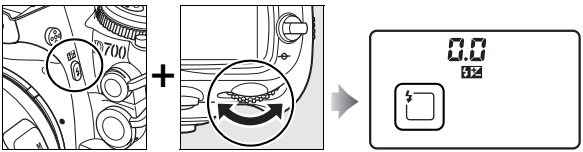


WB button | Sub-command dial | Control panel

■■ *Flash Settings*

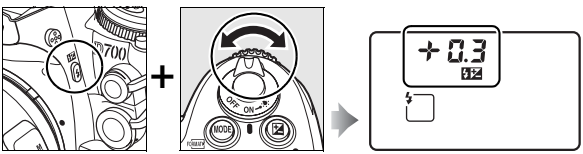
Press the ϟ *button* and rotate the command dials.

Choose flash mode (pg. 185)



ϟ button | Main command dial | Control panel

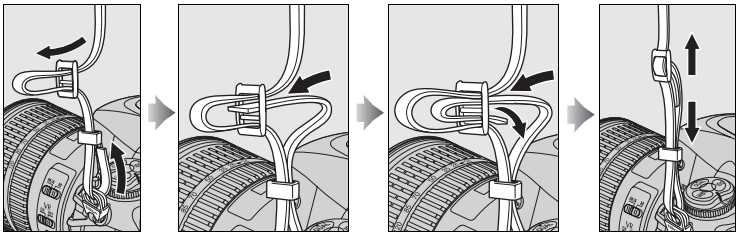
Adjust flash compensation (pg. 190)



ϟ button | Sub-command dial | Control panel

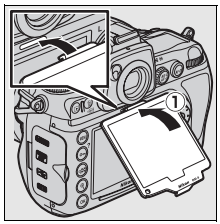
Attaching the AN-D700 Camera Strap

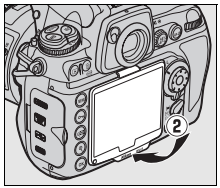
Attach the camera strap securely to the two eyelets on the camera body as shown below.



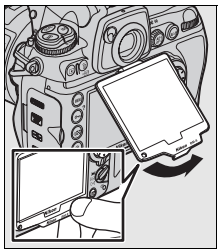
The BM-9 Monitor Cover

A clear plastic cover is provided with the camera to keep the monitor clean and protect it when the camera is not in use. To attach the cover, insert the projection on the top of the cover into the matching indentation above the camera monitor (①) and press the bottom of the cover until it clicks into place (②).





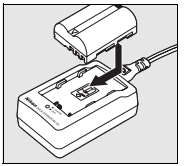
To remove the cover, hold the camera firmly and pull the bottom of the cover gently outwards as shown at right.



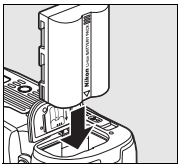
Quick Start Guide

Follow these steps for a quick start with your camera.

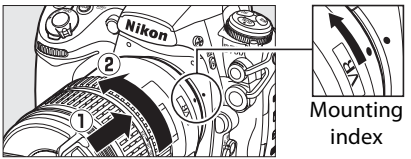
1 Charge the battery (pg. 32).



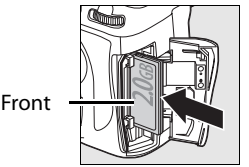
2 Insert the battery (pg. 34).



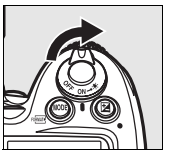
3 Attach a lens (pg. 36).



4 Insert a memory card (pg. 41).

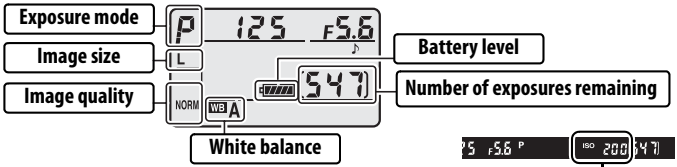


5 Turn the camera on (pg. 46).



For information on choosing a language and setting the time and date, see page 38. See page 45 for information on adjusting viewfinder focus.

6 Check camera settings (pp. 46, 49).

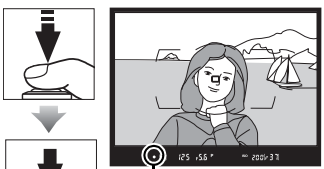


7 Select single-servo autofocus (pp. 51, 72).

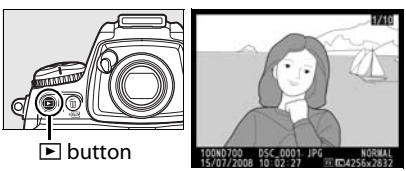
Rotate the focus-mode selector to **S** (single-servo autofocus).

8 Focus and shoot (pp. 53, 54).

Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus, then press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to take the photograph.

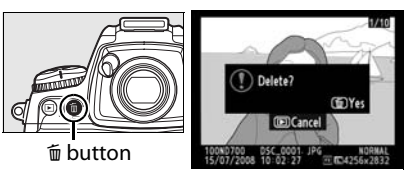


9 View the photograph (pg. 55).



10 Delete unwanted photos (pg. 56).

Press 🗑 twice to delete the current photograph.



Tutorial

This section describes how to use the camera menus, how to ready the camera for use, and how to take your first pictures and play them back.

Camera Menus ..... pg. 26

Using Camera Menus ..... pg. 28

Help ..... pg. 31

First Steps ..... pg. 32

Charge the Battery ..... pg. 32

Insert the Battery ..... pg. 34

Attach a Lens ..... pg. 36

Basic Setup ..... pg. 38

Insert a Memory Card ..... pg. 41

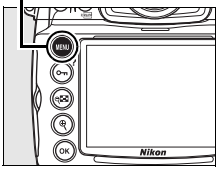
Adjust Viewfinder Focus ..... pg. 45

Basic Photography and Playback ..... pg. 46

Camera Menus

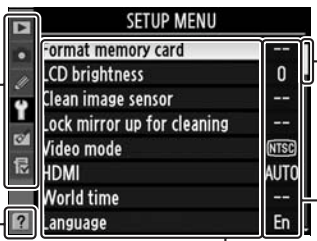
Most shooting, playback, and setup options can be accessed from the camera menus. To view the menus, press the **MENU** button.

MENU button



Tabs
Choose from playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, retouch, and My menus (see following page).

Slider shows position in current menu.



Current settings are shown by icons.

?
If "**?**" icon is displayed, help for current item can be viewed by pressing **O-n** (**?**) button (pg. 31).

Menu options
Options in current menu.

▮▮ *Menus*

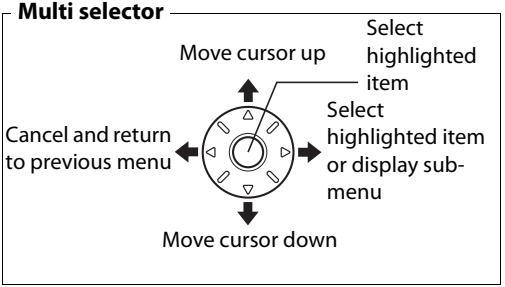
The following menus are available:

Menu	Description
Playback	Adjust playback settings and manage photos (pg. 260).
Shooting	Adjust shooting settings (pg. 268).
Custom Settings	Personalize camera settings (pg. 280).
Setup	Format memory cards and perform basic camera setup (pg. 331).
Retouch	Create retouched copies of existing photographs (pg. 349).
My Menu	Create a menu of custom options (pg. 364). If desired, a menu of recently-used settings can be displayed in place of **My Menu** (pg. 368).

Using Camera Menus

■■ *Menu Controls*

The multi selector and ⓞⓚ button are used to navigate the menus.

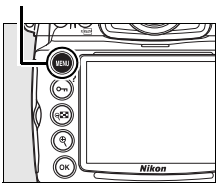


■■ *Navigating the Menus*

Follow the steps below to navigate the menus.

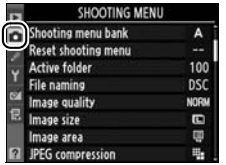
1 Display the menus.

Press the MENU button to display the menus.



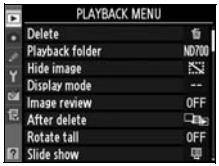
2 Highlight the icon for the current menu.

Press ◀ to highlight the icon for the current menu.



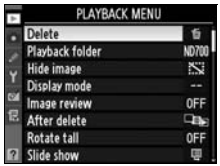
3 Select a menu.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired menu.



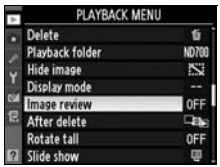
4 Position the cursor in the selected menu.

Press ▶ to position the cursor in the selected menu.



5 Highlight a menu item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a menu item.

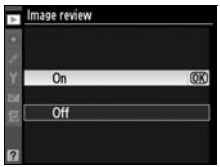


6 Display options.

Press ▶ to display options for the selected menu item.

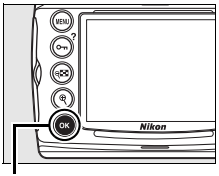
7 Highlight an option.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option.



8 Select the highlighted item.

Press ⓞ to select the highlighted item. To exit without making a selection, press the MENU button.



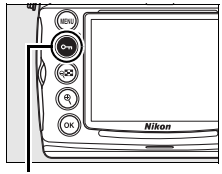
ⓞ button

Note the following points:

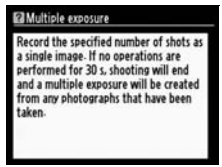
- Menu items that are displayed in gray are not currently available.
- While pressing ▶ or the center of the multi selector generally has the same effect as pressing ⓞ, there are some cases in which selection can only be made by pressing ⓞ.
- To exit the menus and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway (pg. 54).

Help

If a **?** icon is displayed at the bottom left corner of the monitor, help can be displayed by pressing the **O-n** (**?**) button. A description of the currently selected option or menu will be displayed while the button is pressed. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the display.



O-n button



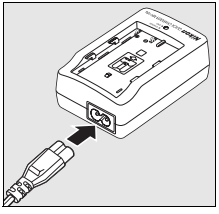
Charge the Battery

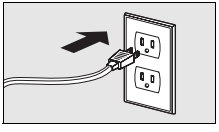
The camera is powered by an EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion battery (supplied).

The EN-EL3e is not fully charged at shipment. To maximize shooting time, charge the battery in the supplied MH-18a quick charger before use. About two and a quarter hours are required to fully recharge the battery when no charge remains.

1 Plug the charger in.

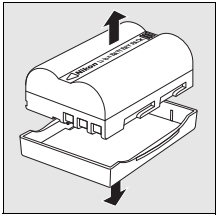
Insert the AC adapter plug into the battery charger and plug the power cable into an electrical outlet.





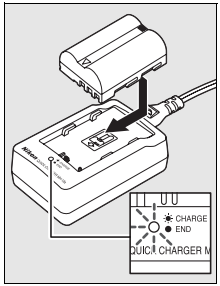
2 Remove the terminal cover.

Remove the terminal cover from the battery.



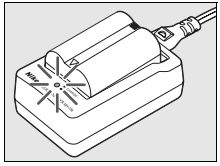
3 Insert the battery.

Insert the battery into the charger. The CHARGE lamp will blink while the battery charges.



4 Remove the battery when charging is complete.

Charging is complete when the CHARGE lamp stops blinking. Remove the battery and unplug the charger.

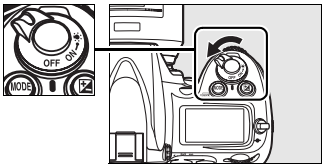


Insert the Battery

1 Turn the camera off.

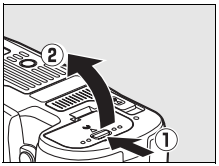
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing batteries.

Power switch



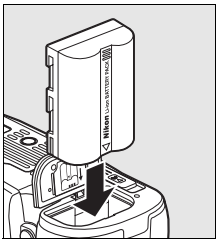
2 Open the battery-chamber cover.

Open the battery-chamber cover on the bottom of the camera.

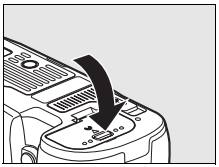


3 Insert the battery.

Insert the battery as shown at right.



4 Close the battery-chamber cover.



■■ *Removing the Battery*

Before removing the battery, turn the camera off. To prevent short-circuits, replace the terminal cover when the battery is not in use.

The Battery and Charger

Read and follow the warnings and cautions on pages xviii–xx and 398–401 of this manual. To prevent short-circuits, replace the terminal cover when the battery is not in use.

Do not use the battery at ambient temperatures below 0°C (32°F) or above 40°C (104°F). Charge indoors at ambient temperatures in the vicinity of 5–35°C (41–95°F); for best results, charge the battery at temperatures above 20°C (68°F). Battery capacity may temporarily drop if the battery is charged at low temperatures or used at a temperature below the temperature at which it was charged. If the battery is charged at a temperature below 5°C (41°F), the battery life indicator in the **Battery info** (pg. 340) display may show a temporary decrease.

The battery may be hot immediately after use. Wait for the battery to cool before recharging.

Use the charger with compatible batteries only. Unplug when not in use.

Incompatible Batteries

This camera can not be used with EN-EL3 or EN-EL3a rechargeable Li-ion batteries for the D100, D70 series, or D50 or with the MS-D70 CR2 battery holder.

EN-EL3e Rechargeable Li-ion Batteries

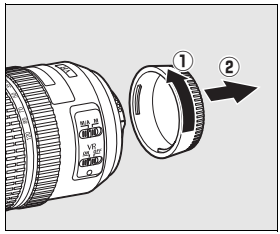
The supplied EN-EL3e shares information with compatible devices, enabling the camera to show battery charge state in six levels (pg. 46). The **Battery info** option in the setup menu details battery charge, battery life, and the number of pictures taken since the battery was last charged (pg. 340).

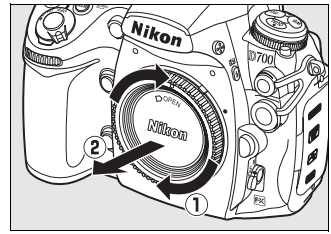
Attach a Lens

Care should be taken to prevent dust from entering the camera when the lens is removed.

1 Remove the rear lens cap and the camera body cap.

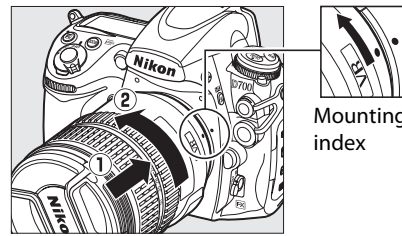
After confirming that the camera is off, remove the rear lens cap from the lens and remove the camera body cap.





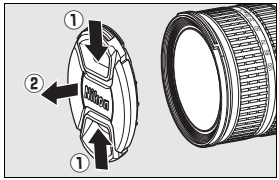
2 Attach the lens.

Keeping the mounting mark on the lens aligned with the mounting mark on the camera body, position the lens in the camera's bayonet mount. Being careful not to press the lens-release button, rotate the lens counter-clockwise until it clicks into place.



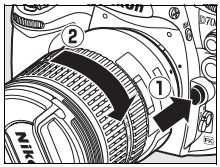
If the lens is equipped with an **A-M** or **M/A-M** switch, select **A** (autofocus) or **M/A** (autofocus with manual priority).

3 Remove the lens cap.



■ *Detaching the Lens*

Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens release button while turning the lens clockwise. After removing the lens, replace the lens caps and camera body cap.

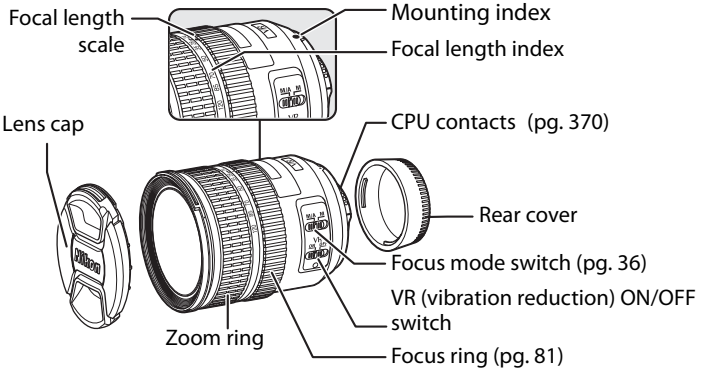


✓ CPU Lenses with Aperture Rings

In the case of CPU lenses equipped with an aperture ring (pg. 370), lock aperture at the minimum setting (highest f-number). See the lens manual for details.

Lens

An AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 24-120mm f/3.5-5.6G IF-ED lens is used in this manual for illustrative purposes.

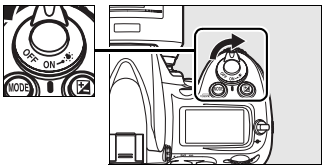


Basic Setup

The language option in the setup menu is automatically highlighted the first time menus are displayed. Choose a language and set the time and date. Note that if the time and date are not set, CLOCK will blink in the monitor and the time and date recorded with photographs will be incorrect.

1 Turn the camera on.

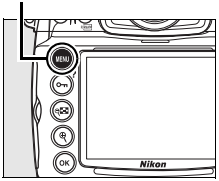
Power switch



2 Select **Language**.

Press MENU to display the camera menus, then select **Language** in the setup menu. For information on using menus, see "Using Camera Menus" (pg. 28).

MENU button



3 Select a language.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired language and press OK.

4 Select **World time.**

Select **World time** and press ▶.

5 Set time zone.

A time-zone selection dialog will be displayed. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the local time zone (the **UTC** field shows the difference between the selected time zone and Coordinated Universal Time, or UTC, in hours) and press ⊛.

6 Turn daylight saving time on or off.

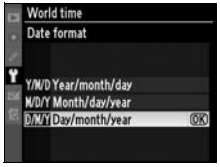
Daylight saving time options will be displayed. Daylight saving time is off by default; if daylight saving time is in effect in the local time zone, press ▲ to highlight **On** and press ⊛.

7 Set the date and time.

The dialog shown at right will be displayed. Press ◀ or ▶ to select an item, ▲ or ▼ to change. Press ⊛ when the clock is set to the current date and time.

8 Set date format.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the order in which the year, month, and day will be displayed and press ⊛.



9 Exit to shooting mode.

Press the shutter-release button halfway to exit to shooting mode.

The Clock Battery

The camera clock is powered by an independent, rechargeable power source, which is charged as necessary when the main battery is installed or the camera is powered by an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter (pg. 385). Two days of charging will power the clock for about three months. If the CLOCK icon flashes in the control panel, the clock battery is exhausted and the clock has been reset. Set the clock to the correct time and date.

The Camera Clock

The camera clock is less accurate than most watches and household clocks. Check the clock regularly against more accurate time pieces and reset as necessary.

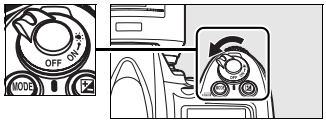
Insert a Memory Card

The camera stores photographs on Type I CompactFlash memory cards (available separately; pg. 390). Type II CompactFlash cards and microdrives can not be used. The following section describes how to insert and format a memory card.

1 Turn the camera off.

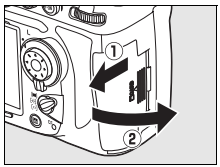
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing memory cards.

Power switch



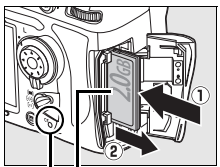
2 Open the card slot cover.

Slide the card slot cover out (①) and open the card slot (②).



3 Insert the memory card.

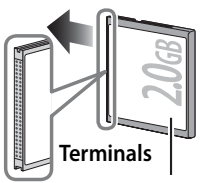
Insert the memory card with the front label toward the monitor (①). When the memory card is fully inserted, the eject button will pop up (②) and the green access lamp will light briefly.



Inserting Memory Cards

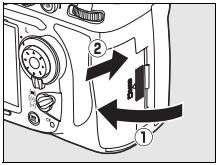
Insert the memory card terminals first. Inserting the card upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card. Check to be sure that the card is in the correct orientation.

Direction of insertion



4 Close the card slot cover.

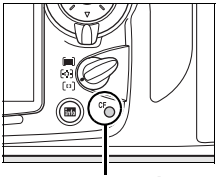
Close (①) and latch (②) the card slot cover.



■■ *Removing Memory Cards*

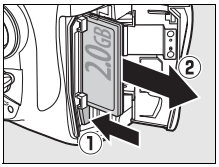
1 Turn the camera off.

Confirm that the access lamp is off and turn the camera off.



Access lamp

2 Remove the memory card.



Open the memory card slot cover and press the eject button (①) to partially eject the card (②). The memory card can then be removed by hand. Do not push on the memory card while pressing the eject button. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the camera or memory card.

Formatting Memory Cards

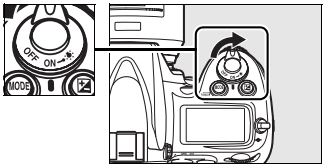
Memory cards must be formatted before first use. Format the card as described below.

☑ Formatting Memory Cards

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain. Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (pg. 238).

1 Turn the camera on.

Power switch

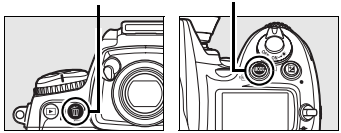


2 Press the FORMAT buttons.

Hold the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons down simultaneously for approximately two seconds.

🗑 button

MODE button



A blinking For will appear in the shutter-speed displays in the control panel and viewfinder. To exit without formatting the memory card, wait six seconds (the default setting) until For stops blinking or press any button other than the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons.

3 Press the FORMAT buttons again.

Press the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons together a second time while For is blinking to format the memory card. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting.*

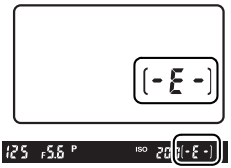
When formatting is complete, the control panel and viewfinder will show the number of photographs that can be recorded at current settings.

Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Memory cards that have been formatted in a computer or other device must be reformatted in the camera before they can be used for recording or playback.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not expose to water, heat, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

No Memory Card

If no memory card is inserted, the control panel and viewfinder will show [- E -]. If the camera is turned off with a charged EN-EL3e battery and no memory card inserted, [- E -] will be displayed in the control panel.



See Also

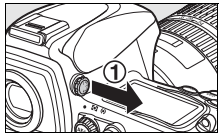
See page 332 for information on formatting memory cards using the **Format memory card** option in the setup menu.

Adjust Viewfinder Focus

The camera is equipped with diopter adjustment to accommodate individual differences in vision. Check that the display in the viewfinder is in focus before shooting.

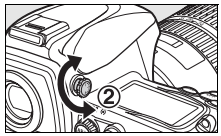
1 Lift the diopter adjustment control.

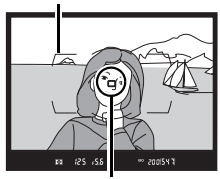
Remove the lens cap, turn the camera on, and pull the diopter adjustment control out (①).



2 Focus the viewfinder.

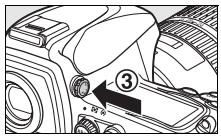
Rotate the diopter control until the viewfinder display, focus points, and AF area brackets are in sharp focus.





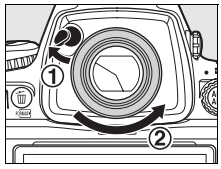
3 Replace the diopter adjustment control.

Push the diopter adjustment control back in (③).



Diopter Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses

Corrective lenses (available separately; pg. 386) can be used to further adjust viewfinder diopter. Before attaching a diopter-adjustment viewfinder lens, remove the DK-17 viewfinder eyepiece by closing the viewfinder shutter to release the eyepiece lock (①) and then unscrewing the eyepiece as shown at right (②).



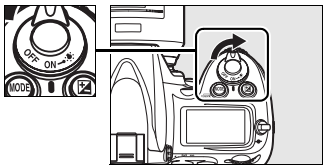
Turn the Camera On

Before taking photographs, turn the camera on and check the battery level and number of exposures remaining as described below.

1 Turn the camera on.

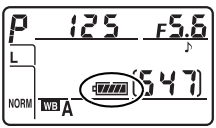
Turn the camera on. The control panel will turn on and the display in the viewfinder will light.

Power switch



2 Check the battery level.

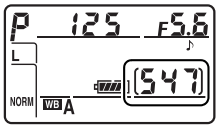
Check the battery level in the control panel or viewfinder.



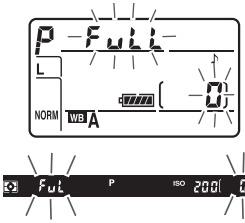
Icon *		Description
Control panel	Viewfinder	
	—	Battery fully charged.
	—	Battery partially discharged.
	—	
	—	
		Low battery. Prepare to charge battery or ready spare battery.
(blinks)	(blinks)	Shutter release disabled. Charge or exchange battery.

* No icon displayed when camera is powered by optional AC adapter.

3 Check the number of exposures remaining.

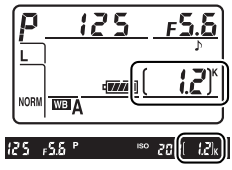


The exposure-count displays in the control panel and viewfinder show the number of photographs that can be taken at current settings. When this number reaches zero, 0 will flash in the exposure-count displays while the shutter-speed displays will show a blinking FuLL or FuL.



Large-Capacity Memory Cards

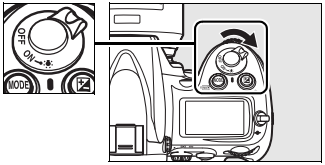
When enough memory remains on the memory card to record a thousand or more pictures at current settings, the number of exposures remaining will be shown in thousands, rounded down to the nearest hundred (e.g., if there is room for approximately 1,260 exposures, the exposure count display will show 1.2 K).



LCD Illuminators

Holding the power switch in the ☀ position activates the exposure meters and control panel backlights (LCD illuminators), allowing the display to be read in the dark. After the power switch is released, the illuminator will remain lit for six seconds (at default settings) while the camera exposure meters are active or until the shutter is released or the power switch is rotated to ☀ again.

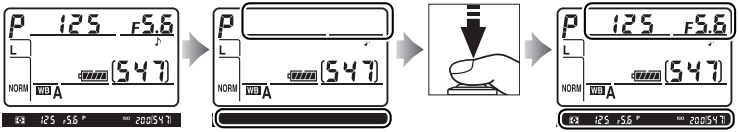
Power switch



Auto Meter Off

At default settings, the shutter speed and aperture displays in the control panel and viewfinder will turn off if no operations are performed for about six seconds (auto meter off), reducing the drain on the battery. Press the shutter-release button halfway to reactivate the display in the viewfinder (pg. 54).

6 s



Exposure meters on | Exposure meters off | Exposure meters on

The length of time before the exposure meters turn off automatically can be adjusted using Custom Setting c2 (**Auto meter-off delay**, pg. 296).

Camera Off Display

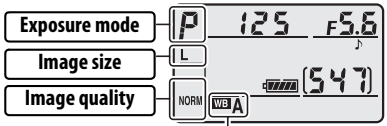
If the camera is turned off with a battery and memory card inserted, the frame count and number of exposures remaining will be displayed (some memory cards may only display this information when the camera is on).

Control panel

Adjust Camera Settings

This tutorial describes how to take photos at default settings.

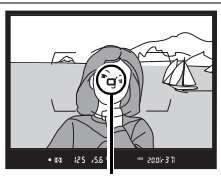
1 Check camera settings.



Control panel

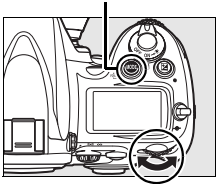
Viewfinder display

Default settings are listed below.

Option	Default	Description	Page
Image quality	**NORM** (JPEG normal)	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1 : 8 (**Size priority** selected for **JPEG compression**). Ideal for snapshots.	64
Image size	**L** (Large)	FX format images are 4,256 × 2,832 pixels in size.	69
ISO sensitivity	200	ISO sensitivity (digital equivalent of film speed) set to ISO 200.	106
White balance	**AUTO** (Auto)	White balance is adjusted automatically for natural colors under most types of lighting.	140
Exposure mode	***P*** (Programmed auto)	Camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.	114
Focus point	Center focus point (single-point AF)	 Focus point Viewfinder focus point display is shown above. Camera focuses on subject in center focus point when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	76

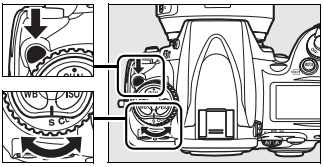
2 Choose exposure mode P.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial to select exposure mode P. The camera will automatically adjust shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.



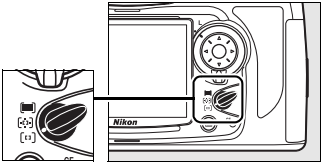
3 Choose single frame release mode.

Hold the release mode dial lock release down and turn the release mode dial to S (single frame). At this setting, the camera will take one photograph each time the shutter-release button is pressed.



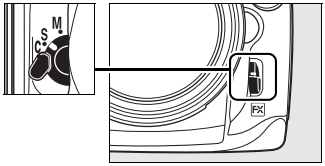
4 Choose single-point AF.

Rotate the AF-area mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to [▪] (single-point AF). At this setting, the user can choose the focus point.



5 Choose single-servo autofocus.

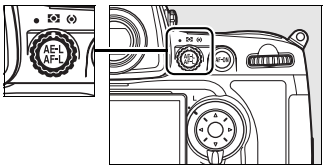
Focus-mode selector



Rotate the focus-mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to **S** (single-servo autofocus). At this setting, the camera will automatically focus on the subject in the selected focus point when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Pictures can only be taken when the camera is in focus.

6 Choose matrix metering.

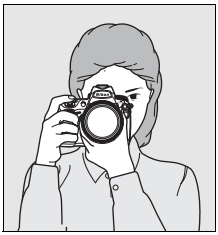
Metering selector



Rotate the metering selector to ▣ (matrix metering). Matrix metering uses information from the 1,005-segment RGB sensor to ensure optimal results for the entire frame.

Ready the Camera

When framing photographs in the viewfinder, hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left. Keep your elbows propped lightly against your torso for support and place one foot half a pace ahead of the other to keep you upper body stable.

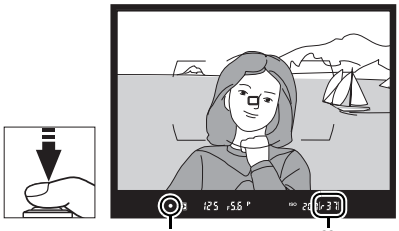


Hold the camera as shown at right when framing photographs in portrait (tall) orientation.

For information on framing photographs in the monitor, see page 89.

Focus and Shoot

1 Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus (pg. 54).



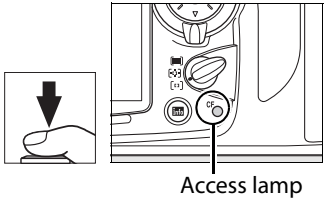
At default settings, the camera will focus on the subject in the center focus point. Frame a photo in the viewfinder with the main subject positioned in the center focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. If the camera is able to focus, a beep will sound and the in-focus indicator (●) will appear in the viewfinder. If the subject is dark, the AF-assist illuminator may light automatically to assist the focus operation.

Viewfinder display	Description
●	Subject in focus.
▶	Focus point is between camera and subject.
◀	Focus point is behind subject.
▶ ◀ (blinks)	Camera unable to focus on subject in focus point using autofocus.

While the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, focus will lock and the number of exposures that can be stored in the memory buffer ("🏃"; pg. 87) will be shown in the viewfinder display.

For information on what to do if the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, see "Getting Good Results with Autofocus" (pg. 80).

2 Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot.



Smoothly press the shutter-release-button the rest of the way down to take the picture. While the photograph is being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the card slot cover will light.

The Memory Card Access Lamp

Do not eject the memory card, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source until the memory card access lamp has gone out.

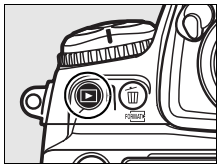
The Shutter-Release Button

The camera has a two-stage shutter-release button. The camera focuses when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. To take the photograph, press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.

Viewing Photographs

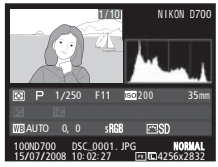
1 Press the ▶ button.

A photograph will be displayed in the monitor.



2 View additional pictures.

Additional pictures can be displayed by pressing ◀ or ▶. To view additional information on the current photograph, press ▲ and ▼ (pg. 220).



To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway.

Image Review

When **On** is selected for **Image review** in the playback menu (pg. 265), photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor for about 4 s (the default setting) after shooting.

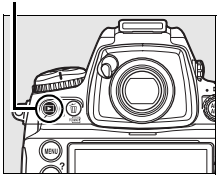
Deleting Unwanted Photographs

To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the 🗑 button. Note that photographs can not be recovered once deleted.

1 Display the photograph.

Display the photograph you wish to delete as described in "Viewing Photographs" on the previous page.

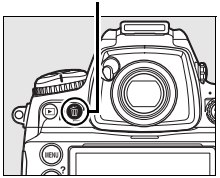
▶ button



2 Delete the photograph.

Press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

🗑 button



Press the 🗑 button again to delete the image and return to playback. To exit without deleting the picture, press ▶.

Delete

To delete multiple images, use the **Delete** option in the playback menu (pg. 262).

Image Recording Options

This section describes how to choose image area, quality, and size.

Image Area ..... **pg. 58**
Image Quality ..... **pg. 64**
Image Size ..... **pg. 69**

Image Area

The camera's FX format (36.0 × 23.9 mm) image sensor can be used to record pictures with an image area (picture angle) equivalent to a 35 mm (135) format film camera. Image area is selected using the **Image area** option in the shooting menu. At the default setting of **Auto DX crop**, the camera will automatically crop pictures to the DX picture angle when a DX format lens is attached. The **Choose image area** option can be used to select a 35 mm picture angle.

■■ *Auto DX Crop*

Choose whether to automatically select a DX crop when a DX lens is attached.

Option	Description
On (default)	Camera automatically selects DX crop when DX lens is attached.
Off	Crop selected for **Choose image area** is used.

■■ *Choose Image Area*

Choose the image area used when **Off** is selected for **Auto DX crop** (pg. 61).

Option	Description	
FX **FX format (36x24)**	Images are recorded in FX format using the full area of the image sensor (36.0 × 23.9 mm), producing a picture angle equivalent to a Nikkor lens on a 35 mm format camera. The edges of pictures taken with DX format lenses will be blacked out.	
DX **DX format (24x16)**	An area at the center of the image sensor 23.5 × 15.6 mm (shown by the DX format crop in the viewfinder) is used to record pictures in DX format. To calculate the approximate focal length of the lens in 35 mm format, multiply by 1.5.	DX format crop

The DX Format Crop

If **Auto** (the default setting) or **On** is selected for Custom Setting a6 (**AF point illumination**), the DX format crop is shown by a frame in the viewfinder when DX format is active. If **Off** is selected, the area outside the DX format crop is indicated by a transparent mask.

DX format crop

DX Lenses

DX lenses are designed for use with DX format cameras and have a smaller picture angle than lenses for 35 mm format cameras. If **Auto DX crop** is off and **FX format (36 × 24)** is selected for **Image area** when a DX lens is attached, the edges of the image may be eclipsed. This may not be apparent in the viewfinder, but when the images are played back you may notice a drop in resolution or that the edges of the picture are blacked out.

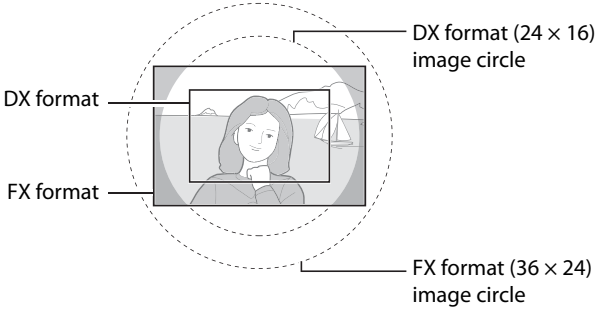
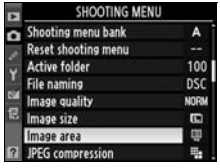


Image area can be set using the **Image area** option in the shooting menu or (if image area is assigned to the **Fn** button) by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating the main command dial.

■■ *The Image Area Menu*

1 **Select Image area.**

Highlight **Image area** in the shooting menu (pg. 268) and press ▶.



2 **Choose an option.**

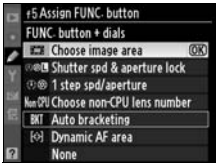
Highlight **Auto DX crop** or **Choose image area** and press ▶.

3 **Adjust settings.**

Choose an option and press ⊛. The selected crop is displayed in the viewfinder (pg. 59).

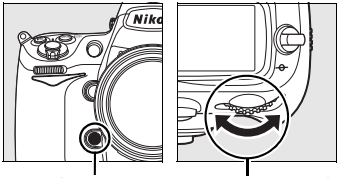
1 Assign image area to the Fn button.

Select **Choose image area** for Custom Setting f5, **Assign FUNC. button** > **FUNC. button + dials** (pg. 323).



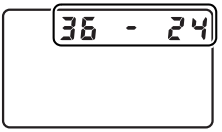
2 Choose the image area.

Press the **Fn** button and rotate the main command dial until the desired crop is displayed in the viewfinder (pg. 59). This operation can not be performed while a multiple exposure is being recorded (pg. 201).



Fn button **Main command dial**

The option currently selected for image area can be viewed by pressing the **Fn** button to display the image area in the viewfinder, control panel, or shooting information display. FX format is displayed as "36 – 24", DX format as "24 – 16".



Auto DX Crop

The **Fn** button can not be used to select image area when a DX lens is attached and **Auto DX crop** is on.

The Fn, Depth-of-Field Preview, and AE-L/AF-L Buttons

Changes to image area settings can be made using the **Fn** button (the default setting, see Custom Setting f5, **Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320), the depth-of-field preview button (Custom setting f6, **Assign preview button**, pg. 324), or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (Custom Setting f7, **Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325). Note that some "button press" options can not be combined with options using "+dials."

Image Size

Image size varies with the option selected for image area.

Image Quality

The following image quality options are available:

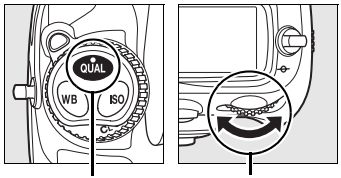
Option	File type	Description
NEF (RAW)	NEF	Raw data from the image sensor are saved directly to the memory card in Nikon Electronic Format (NEF). Use with images that will be transferred to a computer for printing or processing. Note that once transferred to a computer, NEF (RAW) images can only be viewed using compatible software such as ViewNX (supplied; pg. 238) or Capture NX 2 (available separately; pg. 388).
TIFF (RGB)	TIFF (RGB)	Record uncompressed TIFF-RGB images at a bit depth of 8 bits per channel (24-bit color). TIFF is supported by a wide variety of imaging applications.
JPEG fine	JPEG	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:4 (fine image quality). *
JPEG normal		Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:8 (normal image quality). *
JPEG basic		Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:16 (basic image quality). *
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG fine	NEF/ JPEG	Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one fine-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG normal		Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one normal-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG basic		Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one basic-quality JPEG image.

* **Size priority** selected for **JPEG compression**.

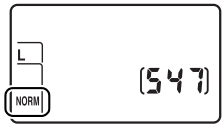
File Size

See page 423 for information on the number of pictures that can be recorded at different image quality and size settings.

Image quality is set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the control panel.



QUAL button **Main command dial**



Control panel

The Image Quality Menu

Image quality can also be adjusted using the **Image quality** option in the shooting menu (pg. 268).

NEF (RAW) Recording

The **NEF (RAW) recording** item in the shooting menu controls compression (pg. 67) and bit depth (pg. 68) for NEF (RAW) images.

JPEG Compression

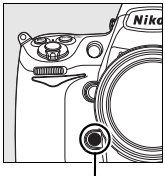
JPEG images can be compressed for relatively uniform file size or optimal image quality. The **JPEG compression** option in the shooting menu can be used to choose the type of compression (pg. 67).

NEF (RAW)+JPEG

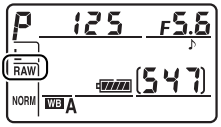
When photographs taken at **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic** are viewed on the camera, only the JPEG image will be displayed. When photographs taken at these settings are deleted, both NEF and JPEG images will be deleted.

"+NEF (RAW)"

If **+NEF (RAW)** is selected for Custom Setting f5 (**Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320) and image quality is set to **JPEG fine**, **JPEG normal**, or **JPEG basic**, an NEF (RAW) copy will be recorded with the next picture taken after the **Fn** button is pressed. "RAW" will be displayed in the control panel until the picture is taken. To exit without recording an NEF (RAW) copy, press the **Fn** button again before taking the picture. This function can also be assigned to the depth-of-field preview button (pg. 324) or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (pg. 325).



Fn button



■■ *The JPEG Compression Menu*

The **JPEG compression** item in the shooting menu offers the following options for JPEG images:

Option	Description
Size priority (default)	Images are compressed to produce relatively uniform file size. Quality varies with scene recorded.
Optimal quality	Optimal image quality. File size varies with scene recorded.

■■ *The NEF (RAW) Recording Menu: Type*

The **NEF (RAW) recording** > **Type** item in the shooting menu offers the following compression options for NEF (RAW) images:

Option	Description
Lossless compressed (default)	NEF images are compressed using a reversible algorithm, reducing file size by about 20–40% with no effect on image quality.
Compressed	NEF images are compressed using a non-reversible algorithm, reducing file size by about 40–55% with almost no effect on image quality.
Uncompressed	NEF images are not compressed. Recording time increases slightly.

■■ *The NEF (RAW) Recording Menu: NEF (RAW) Bit Depth*

The **NEF (RAW) recording** > **NEF (RAW) bit depth** item in the shooting menu offers the following bit-depth options for NEF (RAW) images:

Option	Description
12-bit **12-bit** (default)	NEF (RAW) images are recorded at a bit-depth of 12 bits.
14-bit **14-bit**	NEF (RAW) images are recorded at a bit-depth of 14 bits, producing files larger than 12-bit files but increasing the color data recorded.

NEF (RAW) Images

Note that the option selected for image size does not affect the size of NEF (RAW) images. When opened in software such as Capture NX 2 (available separately) or ViewNX (supplied), NEF (RAW) images have the dimensions given for large (**L**-size) images.

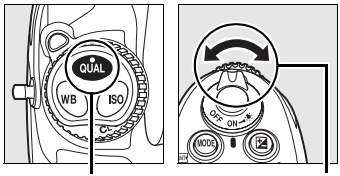
Image Size

Image size is measured in pixels. Choose from **L**arge (the default option), **M**edium, or **S**mall (note that image size varies depending on the option selected for **Image area**, pg. 58):

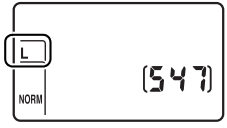
Image area	Option	Size (pixels)	Print size (cm/in.) *
FX format (36 × 24)	**L**	4,256 × 2,832	54.1 × 36.0/21.3 × 14.2
	M	3,184 × 2,120	40.4 × 26.9/15.9 × 20.6
	S	2,128 × 1,416	27.0 × 18.0/10.6 × 7.1
DX format (24 × 16)	**L**	2,784 × 1,848	35.4 × 23.5/13.9 × 9.2
	M	2,080 × 1,384	26.4 × 17.6/10.4 × 6.9
	S	1,392 × 920	17.7 × 11.7/7.0 × 4.6

* Approximate size when printed at 200 dpi. Print size in inches equals image size in pixels divided by printer resolution in **d**ots **p**er **i**nch (dpi; 1 inch = approximately 2.54 cm). Print size decreases as printer resolution increases.

Image size can be set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial until the desired option is displayed in the control panel.



QUAL button **Sub-command dial**



Control panel

The Image Size Menu

Image size can also be adjusted using the **Image size** option in the shooting menu (pg. 268).

Focus

– Controlling How the Camera Focuses

This section describes the options that control how your camera focuses.

Focus Mode .....pg. 72

AF-Area Mode .....pg. 74

Focus Point Selection .....pg. 76

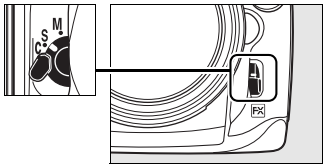
Focus Lock .....pg. 78

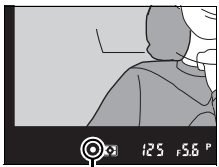
Manual Focus .....pg. 81

Focus Mode

Focus mode is controlled by the focus-mode selector on the front of the camera. There are two *autofocus* (AF) modes, in which the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and one *manual focus* mode, in which focus must be adjusted manually using the focusing ring on the lens:

Focus-mode selector

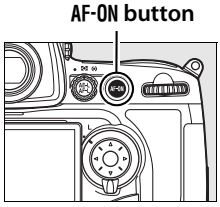


Option	Description
S Single-servo AF	Camera focuses when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Focus locks when in-focus indicator (●) appears in viewfinder, and remains locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway (*focus lock*). At default settings, shutter can only be released when in-focus indicator is displayed (*focus priority*).  Focus indicator
C Continuous-servo AF	Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If subject moves, camera will engage *predictive focus tracking* (pg. 73) to predict final distance to subject and adjust focus as necessary. At default settings, shutter can be released whether or not subject is in focus (*release priority*).
M Manual (pg. 81)	Camera does not focus automatically; focus must be adjusted manually using the lens focusing ring. If maximum aperture of lens is f/5.6 or faster, viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm focus (*electronic range finding*; pg. 82), but photographs can be taken at any time, whether or not subject is in focus.

Choose single-servo AF for landscapes and other stationary subjects. Continuous-servo AF may be a better choice with erratically-moving subjects. Manual focus is recommended when the camera is unable to focus using autofocus.

The AF-ON Button

Autofocus can also be activated by pressing the **AF-ON** button.



Predictive Focus Tracking

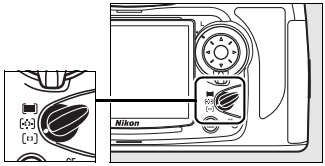
In continuous-servo AF, the camera will initiate predictive focus tracking if the subject moves toward or away from the camera while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway or the **AF-ON** button is pressed. This allows the camera to track focus while attempting to predict where the subject will be when the shutter is released.

See Also

For information on using focus priority in continuous-servo AF, see Custom Setting a1 (**AF-C priority selection**, pg. 283). For information on using release priority in single-servo AF, see Custom Setting a2 (**AF-S priority selection**, pg. 284). For information on preventing the camera from focusing when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, see Custom Setting a5 (**AF activation**, pg. 287).

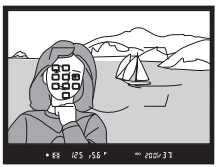
AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode determines how the focus point is selected in autofocus mode. To select the AF-area mode, rotate the AF-area mode selector. The following options are available:



AF-area mode selector

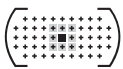
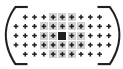
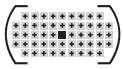
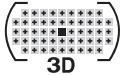
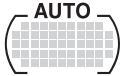
Mode	Description
[··] Single-point AF	User selects focus point manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only. Use for relatively static compositions with subjects that will stay in selected focus point.
[···] Dynamic-area AF	• **In continuous-servo AF** (pg 72), user selects focus point manually; if subject briefly leaves selected focus point, camera will focus based on information from surrounding points. Number of focus points used can be selected from 9, 21, and 51 using Custom Setting a3 (**Dynamic AF area**, pg. 285). If **51 points (3D-tracking)** is selected for Custom Setting a3, focus point will be selected automatically using 3D-tracking. • **In single-servo AF**, user selects focus point manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only.
[▣] Auto-area AF	Camera automatically detects subject and selects focus point. If type G or D lens is used (pg. 370), camera can distinguish human subjects from background for improved subject detection. In single-servo AF, active focus points are highlighted for about one second after camera focuses. Active focus points are not displayed in continuous-servo AF.



AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode is shown in the shooting information display when the info button is pressed.

AF-area mode indicator

AF-area mode			Information display
[··] Single-point AF			
[⊹] Dynamic-area AF *	Custom Setting a3 (**Dynamic AF area**, pg. 285)	9 points (default)	
		21 points	
		51 points	
		51 points (3D-tracking)	
[▣] Auto-area AF			

* Only active focus point is displayed in the viewfinder. Remaining focus points provide information to assist focus operation.

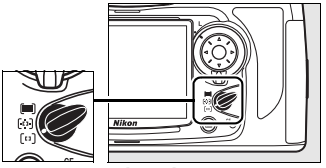
Manual Focus

Single-point AF is automatically selected when manual focus is used.

See Also

For information on the settings available in dynamic-area AF, see Custom Setting a3 (**Dynamic AF area**, pg. 285). For information on adjusting how long the camera waits before refocusing when an object moves in front of the camera, see Custom Setting a4 (**Focus tracking with lock-on**, pg. 287).

Focus Point Selection

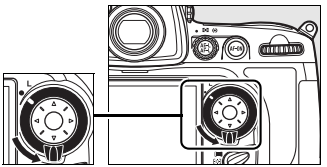


AF-area mode selector

The camera offers a choice of 51 focus points that together cover a wide area of the frame. The focus point can be selected manually, allowing photographs to be composed the main subject positioned almost anywhere in the frame (single-point and dynamic-area AF), or automatically (auto-area AF; note that manual focus point detection is not available when auto-area AF is selected). To select the focus point manually:

1 Rotate the focus selector lock to ●.

This allows the multi selector to be used to select the focus point.


Focus selector lock

2 Select the focus point.

Use the multi selector to select the focus point. At default settings, the center focus point can be selected by pressing the center of the multi selector.

The focus selector lock can be rotated to the locked (**L**) position following selection to prevent the selected focus point from changing when the multi selector is pressed.

See Also

For information on choosing when the focus point is illuminated, see Custom Setting a6 (**AF point illumination**, pg. 288). For information on setting focus-point selection to "wrap around," see Custom Setting a7 (**Focus point wrap-around**, pg. 288). For information on choosing the number of focus points that can be selected using the multi selector, see Custom Setting a8 (**AF point selection**, pg. 289). For information on changing the role of the multi selector center button, see Custom Setting f2 (**Multi selector center button**, pg. 318).

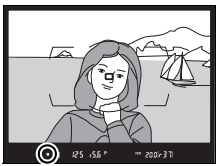
Focus Lock

Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing, making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in a focus point in the final composition. It can also be used when the autofocus system is unable to focus (pg. 80).

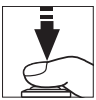
1 Focus.

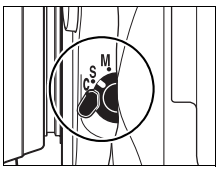
Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus.

2 Check that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.



Single-servo AF





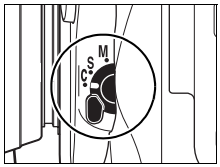
Focus will lock automatically when the in-focus indicator appears, and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway will lock both focus and exposure (an **AE-L** icon appears in the viewfinder when exposure is locked; see page 126).

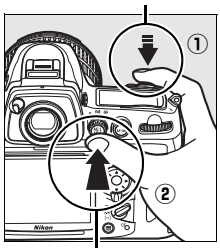
See Also

If **On** is selected for Custom Setting c1 (**Shutter-release button AE-L**, pg. 296), exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

Continuous-servo AF

Press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock both focus and exposure (an **AE-L** icon appears in the viewfinder, see page 126). Focus and exposure will remain locked while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.





3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.

Focus will remain locked between shots as long as the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting. Focus will also remain locked between shots while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed.

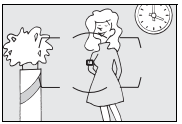
Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.

See Also

For information on choosing the role played by the **AE-L/AF-L** button, see Custom Setting f7 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325).

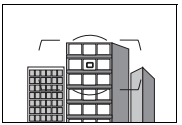
Getting Good Results with Autofocus

Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. The shutter release may be disabled if the camera is unable to focus under these conditions, or the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed and the camera may sound a beep, allowing the shutter to be released even when the subject is not in focus. In these cases, use manual focus (pg. 81) or use focus lock (pg. 78) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.

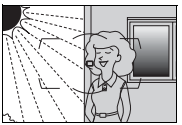


There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background
Example: subject is the same color as the background.

The focus point contains objects at different distances from the camera
Example: subject is inside a cage.

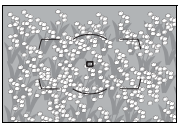


The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns
Example: a row of windows in a skyscraper.



The focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness
Example: subject is half in the shade.

Background objects appear larger than the subject
Example: a building is in the frame behind the subject.

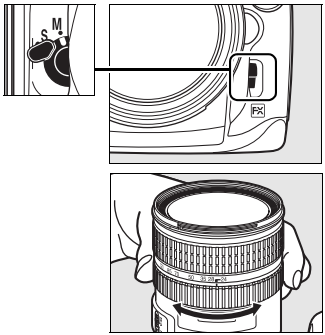


The subject contains many fine details
Example: a field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.

Manual Focus

Manual focus is available for lenses that do not support autofocus (non-AF Nikkor lenses) or when the autofocus does not produce the desired results (pg. 80). To focus manually, set the focus-mode selector to **M** and adjust the lens focusing ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.

Focus-mode selector

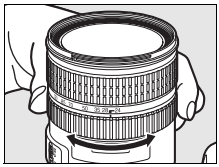


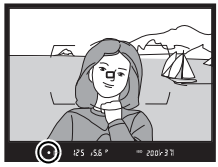
A-M Selection/Autofocus with Manual Priority

If the lens supports A-M selection, set the lens A-M switch to M (manual). If the lens supports M/A (autofocus with manual priority), focus can be adjusted manually, regardless of the mode selected with the lens. See the documentation provided with your lens for details.

The Electronic Rangefinder

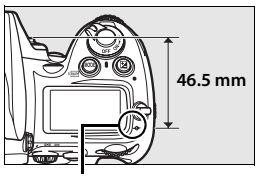
If the lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster, the viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus point is in focus (the focus point can be selected from any of the 51 focus points). After positioning the subject in the selected focus point, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focusing ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed. Note that with the subjects listed on page 80, the in-focus indicator may sometimes be displayed when the subject is not in focus; confirm focus in the viewfinder before shooting.





Focal Plane Position

To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark (⊖) on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83 in.).



Release Mode

– *Single Frame, Continuous, Live View, Self-Timer, or Mirror Up*

Release mode determines how the camera takes photographs: one at a time, in a continuous sequence, with the view through the lens displayed in the monitor, with a timed shutter-release delay, or with the mirror raised to enhance shutter response and minimize vibration.

Choosing a Release Mode..... pg. 84

Continuous Mode..... pg. 86

Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)..... pg. 89

Self-Timer Mode ..... pg. 102

Mirror up Mode..... pg. 104

Choosing a Release Mode

The camera supports the following release modes:

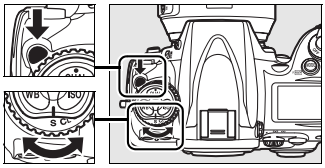
Mode	Description
S Single frame	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.
CL Continuous low speed	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records 1–5 frames per second.[1] Frame rate can be chosen using Custom Setting d4 (**CL mode shooting speed**, pg. 299).
CH Continuous high speed	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records up to 5 frames per second.[2]
Live view	Frame pictures in monitor (pg. 89). Recommended at high or low angles or in other situations in which viewfinder is hard to use or when enlarged view in monitor can assist in obtaining very precise focus.
Self-timer	Use self-timer for self-portraits or to reduce blurring caused by camera shake (pg. 102).
MUP Mirror up	Choose this mode to minimize camera shake in telephoto or close-up photography or in other situations in which the slightest camera movement can result in blurred photographs (pg. 104).

1 Average frame rate with an EN-EL3e battery, continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of $^1/_{250}$ s or faster, remaining settings other than Custom Setting d4 at default values, and memory remaining in memory buffer.

2 Average frame rate with an EN-EL3e battery, continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of $^1/_{250}$ s or faster, other settings at default values, and memory remaining in memory buffer.

To choose a release mode, press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to the desired setting.

Release mode dial lock release



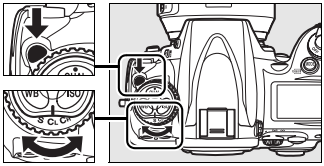
Release mode dial

Continuous Mode

To take pictures in **CH** (continuous high speed) and **CL** (continuous low speed) modes:

1 Select CH or CL mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to **CH** or **CL**.



Release mode dial

2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

While the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down, pictures will be taken at up to 5 fps in continuous high speed mode, or at the frame rate selected for Custom Setting d4 (**CL mode shooting speed**, pg. 299) in continuous low speed mode.

Power Source and Frame Rate

The maximum frame advance rate varies with the power source used.

Power source	Max. frame advance rate [1]
EN-EL3e battery or MB-D10 battery pack with EN-EL3e battery	5 fps [2]
MB-D10 battery pack with EN-EL4a battery or AA-size batteries; AC adapter	8 fps [3]

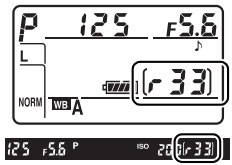
1 Average frame rate with continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of $^1/_{250}$ s or faster, other settings at default values, and memory remaining in memory buffer. If MB-D10 is used with AA batteries, frame rate slows at low temperatures or when batteries are low.

2 Maximum frame advance rate is 5 fps, even when higher values are selected for Custom Setting d4 (**CL mode shooting speed**, pg. 299).

3 Maximum frame rate in **CL** mode is 7 fps.

Buffer Size

The approximate number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the exposure-count displays in the viewfinder and control panel while the shutter-release button is pressed. The illustration at right shows the display when space remains in the buffer for about 33 pictures.



The Memory Buffer

The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. Up to 100 photographs can be taken in succession; note, however, that frame rate will drop when the buffer is full.

While photographs are being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the memory card slot will light. Depending on the number of the images in the buffer, recording may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the access lamp has gone out*. If the camera is switched off while data remain in the buffer, the power will not turn off until all images in the buffer have been recorded. If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and the images transferred to the memory card.

See Also

For information on choosing the maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst, see Custom Setting d5 (**Max. continuous release**, pg. 299). For information on the number of pictures that can be taken in a single burst, see page 423.

Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)

Select live view (Lv) mode to frame pictures in the monitor.

Rotate the release mode dial to Lv.

Choose live view options in shooting menu (pg. 90).

Hand-held (pg. 93)

Raise mirror and display view through lens in monitor.

Frame picture in monitor.

Focus.
Mirror clicks down and monitor turns off.

Check view in monitor.
Monitor turns on when shutter-release button is pressed.

Take pictures.

Tripod (pg. 96)

Frame a picture in the viewfinder and focus.

Raise mirror and display view through lens in monitor.

Focus.
Press 🔍 button to zoom in and check focus.

Take pictures.

Live View Options

Before taking pictures using live view, rotate the mode dial to Lv (live view) and choose a live view mode and the release mode that will be used while the camera is in live view mode. The following live view modes are available:

Option	Description
Hand-held (default)	Choose when taking hand-held shots of moving subjects, or when framing photographs at angles that make it difficult to use the viewfinder (pg. 93). Camera focuses normally using phase-detection autofocus.
Tripod	Choose when the camera is mounted on a tripod. View can be enlarged in monitor for precise focus, making this mode suitable for static subjects (pg. 96). Autofocus can be used to compose photographs with subject positioned at any point in the frame without recomposing photograph. Camera focuses using contrast-detect autofocus.

Phase-Detection Versus Contrast-Detect AF

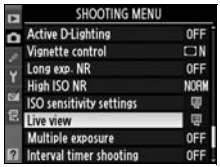
The camera normally uses phase-detection autofocus, in which focus is adjusted based on data from a special focusing sensor. When **Tripod** is selected in live view, however, the camera uses contrast-detect autofocus, in which the camera analyses the data from the image sensor and adjusts focus to produce the greatest contrast. Contrast-detect autofocus takes longer than phase-detection autofocus.

Release mode can be chosen from the following options:

Option		Description
S	**Single frame** (default)	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.
CL	**Continuous low-speed**	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records photographs in continuous low speed or continuous high speed mode (pg. 87).
CH	**Continuous high-speed**	

1 Select **Live view.**

In the shooting menu (pg. 268), highlight **Live view** and press ▶.

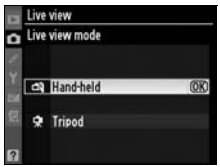


2 Select **Live view mode.**

Highlight **Live view mode** and press ▶.

3 Select a live view mode.

Highlight the desired mode and press ⊛ to return to the live view menu.

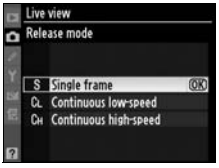


4 Select **Release mode.**

Highlight **Release mode** and press ▶.

5 Select a release mode.

Highlight the release mode that will be during live view and press ⓚ.



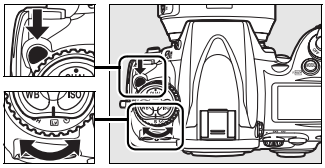
6 Exit to shooting mode.

Press the shutter-release button halfway to exit the menus and return to shooting mode.

Hand-Held Mode

1 Select live view mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to Lv.



Release mode dial

2 Press the shutter-release button all the way down.

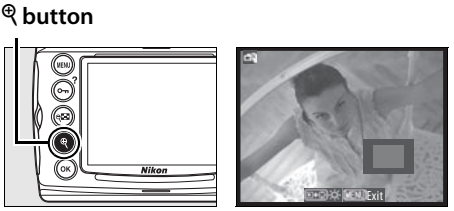
The mirror will be raised and the view through the lens will be displayed in the camera monitor instead of the viewfinder (for improved focus, pause briefly with the shutter-release button pressed halfway before pressing it the rest of the way down). To exit without taking a picture, rotate the release mode dial to another setting or press MENU.

Assigning Live View Mode to a Button

If **Live view** is selected for Custom Setting f5 (**Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320) and a mode dial is set to mode other than Lv or MUP, the **Fn** button can be used to turn live view mode on and off. This allows the self-timer to be used in live view mode. Note that the camera will use the release mode selected with the release mode dial (pg. 84) rather than the mode selected in the **Release mode** menu. If desired, this function can also be assigned to the depth-of-field preview button (pg. 324) or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (pg. 325).

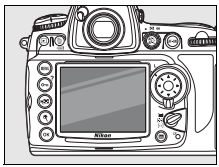
3 Frame a picture in the monitor.

To magnify the view in the monitor up to 13 ×, press the 🔍 button.



While the view through the lens is zoomed in, a navigation window will appear in the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll within the AF area brackets.

4 Focus.



Autofocus (focus mode **S** or **C**): Press the shutter-release button halfway or press the **AF-ON** button. The camera will focus normally and set exposure. Note that the mirror will click back into place while either button is pressed, temporarily interrupting live view. Live view is restored when the button is released. The focus point can be selected using the multi selector.

Manual focus (focus mode **M**; pg. 81): Focus using the lens focusing ring. The focus point for electronic range finding can be selected using the multi selector.

5 Take the picture.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to reset focus and exposure and take the picture. If continuous high speed or continuous low speed is selected for **Release mode**, the monitor will turn off while the shutter-release button is pressed. The frame advance rate for continuous mode is the same as that selected for standard shooting.

☑ No Picture

After shooting, play the picture back in the monitor to ensure that the photograph has been recorded. Note that the sound the mirror makes when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway or the **AF-ON** button is pressed can be mistaken for the sound of the shutter, and that pressing the shutter-release button all the way down when the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF will end live view without a photograph being recorded.

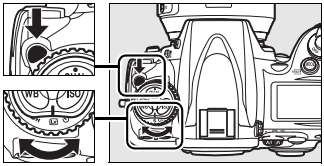
Tripod Mode

1 Ready the camera.

Mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface.

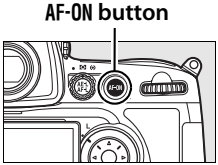
2 Select live view mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to Lv.



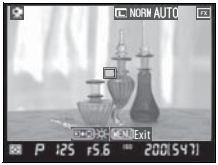
Release mode dial

3 Frame a picture in the viewfinder.



Frame a picture in the viewfinder and select a focus point using the multi selector, then press the **AF-ON** button. The camera will focus normally and set exposure. *Note that the camera can not be focused by pressing the shutter-release button halfway.*

4 Press the shutter-release button all the way down.



The mirror will be raised and the view through the lens will be displayed in the camera monitor. The subject will no longer be visible in the viewfinder. To exit without taking a picture, rotate the release mode dial to another setting or press **MENU**.

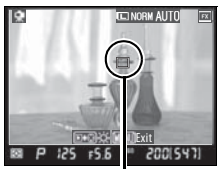
5 Check the view in the monitor.

To magnify the view in the monitor up to 13 × and check focus, press the 🔍 button.

While the view through the lens is zoomed in, a navigation window will appear in the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll to areas of the frame not visible in the monitor.

Press ⓚ to exit zoom.

Autofocus (focus mode **S** or **C**): In tripod mode, the focus point for contrast-detect autofocus can be moved to any point in the frame using the multi selector. To focus using contrast-detect autofocus, press the **AF-ON** button. The focus point will blink green and the monitor may brighten while the camera focuses. If the camera is able to focus using contrast-detect autofocus, the focus point will be displayed in green; if the camera is unable to focus, the focus point will blink red.



Contrast-detect AF point

Manual focus (focus mode **M**; pg. 81): Use zoom for precise focus.

6 Take the picture.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to take the picture. If continuous high speed or continuous low speed is selected for **Release mode**, the monitor will turn off while the shutter-release button is pressed. The frame advance rate for continuous mode is the same as that selected for standard shooting.

Contrast-Detect Autofocus

The camera will not continue to adjust focus while the **AF-ON** button is pressed in continuous-servo autofocus mode. In both single-servo and continuous-servo autofocus modes, the shutter can be released even when the camera is not in focus.

Focusing with Contrast-Detect Autofocus

Contrast-detect autofocus will take longer than normal (phase-detection) autofocus. In the following situations, the camera may be unable to focus using contrast-detect autofocus:

- The camera is not mounted on a tripod
- The subject contains lines parallel to the long edge of the frame
- The subject lacks contrast
- The subject in the focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness, or the subject is lit by spot lighting or by a neon sign or other light source that changes in brightness
- A cross (star) filter or other special filter is used
- The subject appears smaller than the focus point
- The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns (e.g., windows in a skyscraper)
- The subject is moving

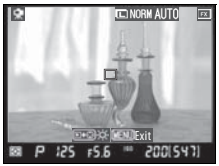
Note that the focus point may sometimes be displayed in green when the camera is unable to focus.

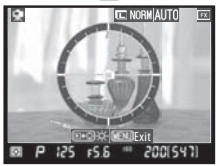
Use an AF-S lens. The desired results may not be achieved with other lenses or teleconverters.

The Shooting Information Display

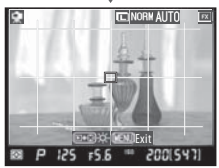
To hide or display indicators in the monitor in live view mode, press the info button.

Shooting information on **Shooting information off**



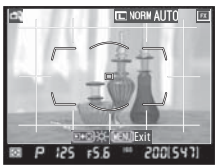


Virtual horizon (not displayed during zoom)

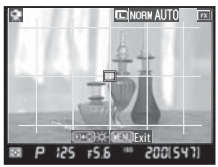


Framing guides (not displayed during zoom)

AF area brackets are displayed only in hand held mode.



Hand held



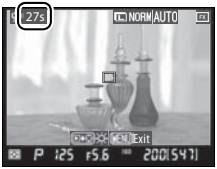
Tripod

Shooting in Live View Mode

Although they will not appear in the final picture, banding or distortion may be visible in the monitor under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps or if the camera is panned horizontally or an object moves at high speed through frame. Bright light sources may leave after-images in the monitor when the camera is panned. Bright spots may also appear. When shooting in live view mode, avoid pointing the camera at the sun or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could result in damage to the camera's internal circuitry.

Live view shooting ends automatically if the lens is removed.

Metering can not be changed in live view mode. Choose a metering method before selecting live view mode.



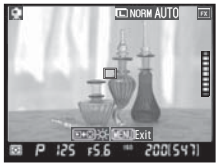
Live view mode can be used for up to an hour. Note, however, that when used in live view mode for extended periods, the camera may become noticeably warm and the temperature of its internal circuits may rise, resulting in image noise and unusual colors. To prevent damage to the camera's internal circuits, live view shooting will end automatically before the camera overheats. A count-down display will appear in the monitor 30 s before shooting ends. At high ambient temperatures, this display may appear immediately when live view mode is selected.

Close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.

To reduce blur in tripod mode, choose **On** for Custom Setting d9 (**Exposure delay mode**, pg. 302).

Monitor Brightness

Monitor brightness can be adjusted by pressing the ▶ button while the view through the monitor is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust brightness (note that monitor brightness has no effect on pictures taken in live view mode). To return to live view, release the ▶ button.



HDMI

When the camera is attached to an HDMI video device, the camera monitor will turn off and the video device will display the view through the lens as shown at right.

Remote Cords

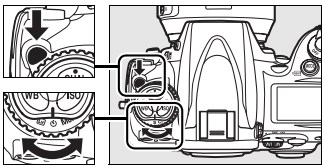
If the shutter-release button on a remote cord (available separately; see pg. 389) is pressed halfway for over a second in tripod mode, it will activate contrast-detect autofocus. If the remote cord shutter-release button is pressed all the way down without focusing, focus will not be adjusted before the picture is taken.

Self-Timer Mode

The self-timer can be used to reduce camera shake or for self-portraits. To use the self-timer, mount the camera on a tripod (recommended) or place the camera on a stable, level surface and follow the steps below:

1 Select self-timer mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to ⏲.

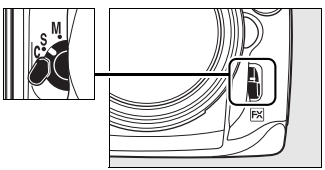


Release mode dial

2 Frame the photograph and focus.

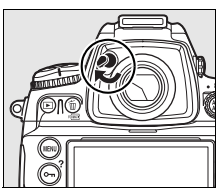
In single-servo autofocus (pg. 72), photographs can only be taken if the in-focus (●) indicator appears in the viewfinder.

Focus-mode selector

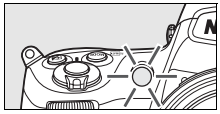


Close the Viewfinder Eyepiece Shutter

Close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.



3 Start the timer.



Press the shutter-release button all the way down to start the timer. The self-timer lamp (AF-assist illuminator) will start to blink and a beep will begin to sound. Two seconds before the photograph is taken, the self-timer lamp will stop blinking and the beeping will become more rapid.

Raising the flash interrupts the timer. To restart, wait until the flash-ready indicator is displayed in the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button halfway.

To turn the self-timer off before a photograph is taken, turn the release mode dial to another setting.

bULb

In self-timer mode, a shutter speed of **bULb** is equivalent to approximately 1/5 s.

See Also

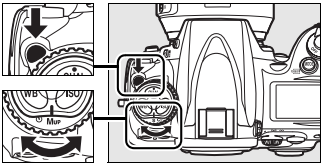
For information on changing the timer duration, see Custom Setting c3 (**Self-timer delay**, pg. 297). For information on setting a beep to sound during the timer count-down, see Custom Setting d1 (**Beep**, pg. 298).

Mirror up Mode

Choose this mode to minimize blurring caused by camera movement when the mirror is raised. Use of a tripod is recommended.

1 Select mirror up mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to **MUP**.



Release mode dial

2 Raise the mirror.

Frame the picture, focus, and then press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to raise the mirror.

Using the Viewfinder

Note that autofocus, metering, and framing can not be confirmed in the viewfinder while mirror is raised.

3 Take a picture.

Press the shutter-release button all the way down again to take a picture. To prevent blurring caused by camera movement, press the shutter-release button smoothly, or use an optional remote cord (pg. 389). The mirror lowers when shooting ends.

Mirror up Mode

A picture will be taken automatically if no operations are performed for about 30 s after the mirror is raised.

ISO

ISO Sensitivity

– Reacting Faster to Light

"ISO sensitivity" is the digital equivalent of film speed. The higher the ISO sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures. This chapter describes how to set ISO sensitivity manually and automatically.

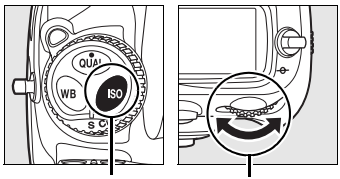
Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually ..... pg. 106

Auto ISO Sensitivity Control ..... pg. 108

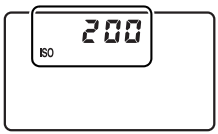
Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually

ISO sensitivity can be set to values between ISO 200 and ISO 6400 in steps equivalent to 1/3 EV. Settings of from about 0.3–1 EV below ISO 200 and 0.3–2 EV above ISO 6400 are also available for special situations.

ISO sensitivity can be adjusted by pressing the **ISO** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the control panel or viewfinder.



ISO button **Main command dial**



Control panel

Viewfinder

ISO sensitivity: 6400

The ISO Sensitivity Menu

ISO sensitivity can also be adjusted using the **ISO sensitivity** option in the shooting menu (pg. 268).

ISO Sensitivity Settings

The settings available depend on the option selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO sensitivity step value**, pg. 292).

Custom Setting b1 (ISO sensitivity step value)	ISO sensitivity settings available
1/3 step (default)	Lo 1, Lo 0.7, Lo 0.3, 200, 250, 320, 400, 500, 640, 800, 1000, 1250, 1600, 2000, 2500, 3200, 4000, 5000, 6400, Hi 0.3, Hi 0.7, Hi 1, Hi 2
1/2 step	Lo 1, Lo 0.5, 200, 280, 400, 560, 800, 1100, 1600, 2200, 3200, 4500, 6400, Hi 0.5, Hi 1, Hi 2
1 step	Lo 1, 200, 400, 800, 1600, 3200, 6400, Hi 1, Hi 2

***** If possible, the current ISO sensitivity setting is maintained when the step value is changed. If the current ISO sensitivity setting is not available at the new step value, ISO sensitivity will be rounded up to the nearest available setting.

Hi 0.3–Hi 2

The settings **Hi 0.3** through **Hi 2** correspond to ISO sensitivities 0.3–2 EV over ISO 6400 (ISO 8000–25600 equivalent). Pictures taken at these settings are more likely to be subject to noise and color distortion.

Lo 0.3–Lo 1

The settings **Lo 0.3** through **Lo 1** correspond to ISO sensitivities 0.3–1 EV below ISO 200 (ISO 160–100 equivalent). Use for larger apertures when lighting is bright. Contrast is slightly lower than normal; in most cases, ISO sensitivities of ISO 200 or above are recommended.

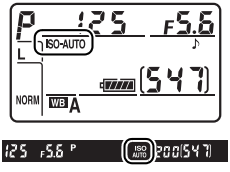
See Also

For information on Custom Setting b1 (**ISO sensitivity step value**, pg. 292). For information using the **High ISO NR** option in the shooting menu to reduce noise at high ISO sensitivities, see page 278.

Auto ISO Sensitivity Control

If **Off** (the default setting) is chosen for the **ISO sensitivity auto control** option in the shooting menu, ISO sensitivity will remain fixed at the value selected by the user (see page 106). If **On** is chosen, ISO sensitivity will automatically be adjusted if optimal exposure can not be achieved at the value selected by the user (flash level is adjusted appropriately). The maximum value for auto ISO sensitivity can be selected using the **Maximum sensitivity** option in the **ISO sensitivity auto control** menu (the minimum value for auto ISO sensitivity is automatically set to ISO 200). In exposure modes **P** and **A**, sensitivity will only be adjusted if underexposure would result at the shutter speed selected for **Minimum shutter speed**. Slower shutter speeds may be used if optimum exposure can not be achieved at the ISO sensitivity value selected for **Maximum sensitivity**.

When **On** is selected, the control panel and viewfinder show **ISO-AUTO**. When sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user, these indicators blink and the altered value is shown in the viewfinder.



Auto ISO Sensitivity Control

Noise is more likely at higher sensitivities. Use the **High ISO NR** option in the shooting menu to reduce noise (see page 278). Foreground subjects may be underexposed in photos taken with the flash at slow shutter speeds, in daylight, or against a bright background. Choose a flash mode other than slow sync or select exposure mode **A** or **M** and choose a larger aperture. Note that when the flash is used, the camera uses the shutter speed selected for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync Speed**, pg. 305) in place of the value selected for **Minimum shutter speed**.

Exposure

– Controlling How the Camera Sets Exposure

This section describes the options available to control exposure, including metering, exposure mode, exposure lock, exposure compensation, and bracketing.

Metering ..... pg. 112

Exposure Mode ..... pg. 114

P: Programmed Auto ..... pg. 116
S: Shutter-Priority Auto ..... pg. 118
A: Aperture-Priority Auto ..... pg. 119
M: Manual ..... pg. 121

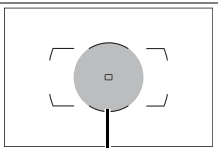
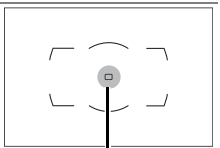
Autoexposure (AE) Lock ..... pg. 126

Exposure Compensation ..... pg. 128

Bracketing ..... pg. 130

Metering

Metering determines how the camera sets exposure. The following options are available:

Method	Description
3D color matrix II	Recommended in most situations. Camera meters a wide area of the frame and sets exposure according to distribution of brightness, color, distance, and composition for natural results.
Center-weighted	Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to area in center of frame (defaults to 12-mm circle in center of viewfinder; if CPU lens is attached, area can be selected using Custom Setting b5, **Center-weighted area**, pg. 294 [1]). Classic meter for portraits. [2]  **Center weight area** [3]
Spot	Camera meters circle 4 mm in diameter (approximately 1.5% of frame). Circle is centered on current focus point, making it possible to meter off-center subjects (if non-CPU lens is used or if Auto-area AF is in effect (pg. 74), camera will meter center focus point). Ensures that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker. [2]  **Spot metering area** [3]

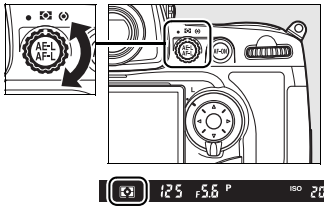
1 When non-CPU lens (pg. 372) is attached, average for entire frame will be used if **Average** is selected for Custom Setting b5; otherwise, center-weighted metering for non-CPU lenses will use 12-mm circle in center of viewfinder, regardless of setting selected for **Non-CPU lens data**.

2 For improved precision with non-CPU lenses, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture in **Non-CPU lens data** menu (pg. 211).

3 Metered area is not actually displayed in viewfinder.

To choose a metering method, rotate the metering selector until the desired mode is displayed.

Metering selector



3D Color Matrix II Metering

In matrix metering, exposure is set using a 1005-segment RGB sensor. Use a type G or D lens for results that include range information (3D color matrix metering II; see page 370 for information on lens types). With other CPU lenses, 3D range information is not included (color matrix metering II). Color matrix metering is available when focal length and maximum aperture of non-CPU lens are specified using **Non-CPU lens data** item in setup menu (see page 211; center-weighted metering is used if focal length or aperture is not specified).

See Also

For information on choosing the size of the area assigned the greatest weight in center-weighted metering, see Custom Setting b5 (**Center-weighted area**, pg. 294). For information on making separate adjustments to optimal exposure for each metering method, see Custom Setting b6 (**Fine tune optimal exposure**, pg. 294).

Exposure Mode

Exposure mode determines how the camera sets shutter speed and aperture when adjusting exposure. Four modes are available: programmed auto (P), shutter-priority auto (S), aperture-priority auto (A), and manual (M).

Mode	Description
P Programmed auto (pg. 116)	Camera sets shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure. Recommended for snapshots and in other situations in which there is little time to adjust camera settings.
S Shutter-priority auto (pg. 118)	User chooses shutter speed; camera selects aperture for best results. Use to freeze or blur motion.
A Aperture-priority auto (pg. 119)	User chooses aperture; camera selects shutter speed for best results. Use to blur background for portraits or bring both foreground and background into focus for landscape shots.
M Manual (pg. 121)	User controls both shutter speed and aperture. Set shutter speed to "bulb" for long time-exposures.

Lens Types

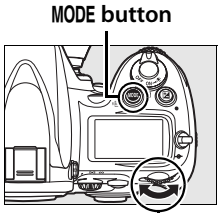
When using a CPU lens equipped with an aperture ring (pg. 370), lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture (highest f-number). Type G lenses are not equipped with an aperture ring.

Non-CPU lenses (pg. 372) can only be used in exposure mode A (aperture-priority auto) and M (manual). In other modes, exposure mode A is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (P or S) in the control panel will blink and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder.

See Also

See page 326 for information on locking shutter speed (modes S and M) and aperture (modes A and M).

To choose the exposure mode, press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial until the desired mode is displayed in the control panel or viewfinder.



Depth-of-Field Preview

To preview the effects of aperture, press and hold the depth-of-field preview button. The lens will be stopped down to the aperture value selected by the camera (modes **P** and **S**) or the value chosen by the user (modes **A** and **M**), allowing depth of field to be previewed in the viewfinder.

Custom Setting e4—Modeling Flash

This setting controls whether the built-in flash and the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-R200, and other optional flash units that support the Creative Lighting System (CLS; see page 377) will emit a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed. See page 315 for more information.

See Also

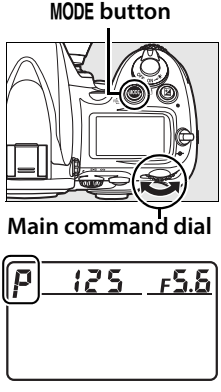
See page 108 for information on auto ISO sensitivity control. For information on using the **Long exp. NR** option in the shooting menu for reducing noise at slow shutter speeds, see page 277. For information on choosing the size of the increments available for shutter speed and aperture, see Custom Setting b2 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**, pg. 292). For information on changing the roles of the main and sub-command dials, see Custom Setting f9 (**Customize command dials** > **Change main/sub**, pg. 326).

P: Programmed Auto

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture according to a built-in program to ensure optimal exposure in most situations. This mode is recommended for snapshots and other situations in which you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in programmed auto:

1 Select exposure mode P.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until P is displayed in the viewfinder and control panel.

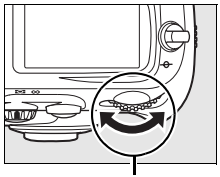


2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

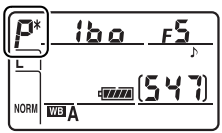
Shutter speed: 1/400 s
Aperture: f/10

Flexible Program

In exposure mode **P**, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the main command dial while the exposure meters are active ("flexible program"). Rotate the command dial to the right for large apertures (small f-numbers) that blur background details or fast shutter speeds that "freeze" motion. Rotate the command dial to the left for small apertures (large f-numbers) that increase depth of field or slow shutter speeds that blur motion. All combinations produce the same exposure. While flexible program is in effect, an asterisk ("*") appears in the control panel. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the command dial until the asterisk is no longer displayed, choose another mode, or turn the camera off.



Main command dial



Shutter speed: 1/4,000 s
Aperture: f/2.8

Shutter speed: 1/80 s
Aperture: f/22

See Also

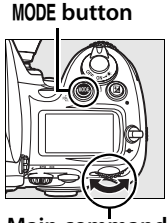
See page 426 for information on the built-in exposure program.

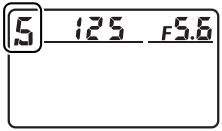
S: Shutter-Priority Auto

In shutter-priority auto, you choose the shutter speed while the camera automatically selects the aperture that will produce the optimal exposure. To take photographs in shutter-priority auto:

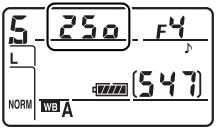
1 Select exposure mode S.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until S is displayed in the viewfinder and control panel.





2 Choose a shutter speed.



While the exposure meters are active, rotate the main command dial to choose the desired shutter speed. Shutter speed can be set to "x 250" or to values between 30 s (30'') and 1/8,000 s (8000). Use slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects, high shutter speeds to "freeze" motion.

Fast shutter speed (1/1,600 s)

Slow shutter speed (1/6 s)

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

See Also

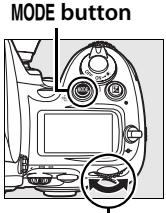
See page 411 for information on what to do if flashing "buLb" indicator appears in the shutter-speed displays.

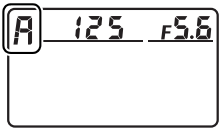
A: Aperture-Priority Auto

In aperture-priority auto, you choose the aperture while the camera automatically selects the shutter speed that will produce the optimal exposure. To take photographs in aperture-priority auto:

1 Select exposure mode A.

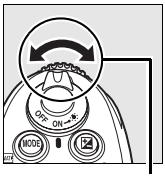
Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until A is displayed in the viewfinder and control panel.

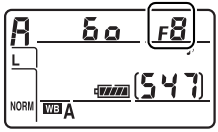




2 Choose an aperture.

While the exposure meters are active, rotate the sub-command dial to choose aperture from values between the minimum and maximum for the lens. Small apertures (high f-numbers) increase depth of field (pg. 115), bringing both foreground and background into focus. Large apertures (low f-numbers) soften background details in portraits or other compositions that emphasize the main subject.



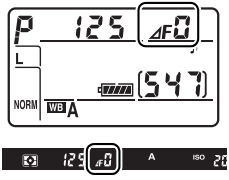


Small aperture (f/32)

Large aperture (f/2.8)

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Non-CPU Lenses (pg. 372)



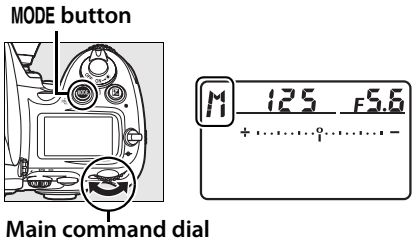
If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** item in setup menu (pg. 211) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (AF, with maximum aperture displayed as AF0) and the f-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

M: Manual

In manual exposure mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in manual exposure mode:

1 Select exposure mode M.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until M is displayed in the viewfinder and control panel.

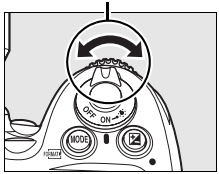


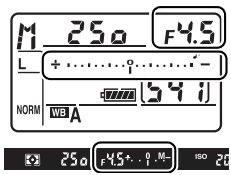
2 Choose aperture and shutter speed.

Rotate the main command dial to choose a shutter speed, and the sub-command dial to set aperture. Shutter speed can be set "x 250" or to values between 30 s and 1/8,000 s, or the shutter can be held open indefinitely for a long time-exposure (bulb, pg. 124). Aperture can be set to values between the minimum and maximum values for the lens. Check exposure in the electronic analog exposure displays (see page 123), and continue to adjust shutter speed and aperture until the desired exposure is achieved.

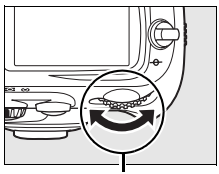
Sub-command dial

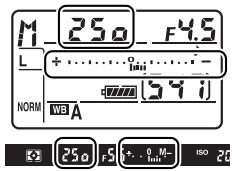
Setting aperture





Setting shutter speed





Main command dial

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

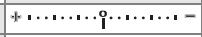
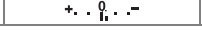
Shutter speed: 1/125 s
Aperture: f/5.6

AF Micro Nikkor Lenses

Provided that an external exposure meter is used, the exposure ratio need only be taken into account when the lens aperture ring is used to set aperture.

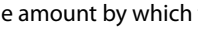
Electronic Analog Exposure Displays

The electronic analog exposure displays in the control panel and viewfinder show whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings. Depending on the option chosen for Custom Setting b2 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**, pg. 292), the amount of under- or over-exposure is shown in increments of 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV. If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, the displays will flash.

	Custom Setting b2 set to 1/3 step		
	Optimal exposure	Underexposed by 1/3 EV	Overexposed by over 2 EV
Control panel			
Viewfinder			

If the camera is unable to achieve optimal exposure at the shutter speed or aperture selected in mode S or A, or will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder, and the electronic analog exposure display will show the amount by which the image will be under- or over-exposed.

See Also

If  (+0−) (the default setting) is selected for Custom Setting f12 (**Reverse indicators**, pg. 330), the exposure indicators in the control panel, viewfinder and shooting information display are displayed with positive values on the left and negative values on the right. Select (−0+) to display negative values on the left and positive values on the right.

Long Time-Exposures

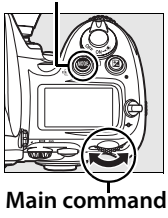
At a shutter speed of **bulb**, the shutter will remain open while the shutter-release button is held down. Use for long time-exposure photographs of moving lights, the stars, night scenery, or fireworks. A tripod and optional remote cord are recommended to prevent blur.

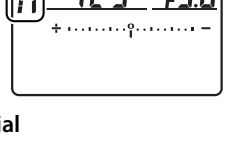
1 Ready the camera.

Mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface. If you are using an optional remote cord, attach it to the camera. If you are not using a remote cord, choose **On** for Custom Setting d9 (**Exposure delay mode**, pg. 302) to prevent blur when the camera shutter-release button is pressed.

2 Select exposure mode M.

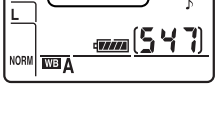
Press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial until M is displayed in the viewfinder and control panel.





3 Choose a shutter speed.

While the exposure meters are active, rotate the main command dial until "bulb" appears in the shutter-speed displays. The electronic analog exposure displays do not appear when "bulb" is selected.



4 Press the shutter-release button all the way down.

Press the shutter-release button on the camera or remote cord all the way down. The shutter will remain open while the shutter-release button is pressed.

5 Release the shutter-release button.

Remove your finger from the shutter-release button to record the photograph.

Length of exposure: 35 s
Aperture: f/25

Long Time-Exposures

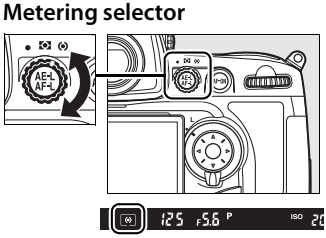
Nikon recommends using a fully-charged EN-EL3e battery or an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter to prevent loss of power while the shutter is open. Note that noise and distortion may be present in long exposures; before shooting, choose **On** for the **Long exp. NR** option in the shooting menu (pg. 277).

Autoexposure (AE) Lock

Use autoexposure lock to recompose photographs after metering exposure.

1 Select center-weighted or spot metering (pg. 112).

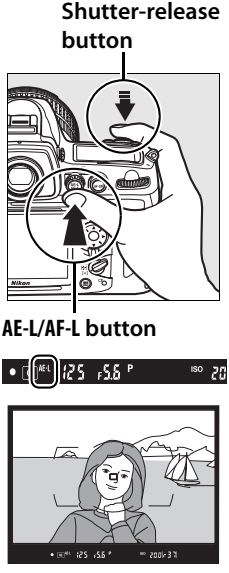
Matrix metering will not produce the desired results with autoexposure lock. If using center-weighted metering, select the center focus point with the multi selector (pg. 76).



2 Lock exposure.

Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus point, press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock exposure (and focus, except in manual focus mode). Confirm that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

While exposure lock is in effect, an **AE-L** indicator will appear in the viewfinder.



3 Recompose the photograph.

Keeping the **AE-L/AF-L** button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.

Metered Area

In spot metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in a 4-mm (0.16 in.) circle centered on the selected focus point. In center-weighted metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in the center of the viewfinder (the default area for center-weighted metering is an 12-mm circle in the center of the viewfinder).

Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture

While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be changed without altering the metered value for exposure:

Exposure mode	Settings
P	Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; pg. 117)
S	Shutter speed
A	Aperture

The new values can be confirmed in the viewfinder and control panel. Note that the metering method can not be changed while exposure lock is in effect (changes to metering take effect when the lock is released).

See Also

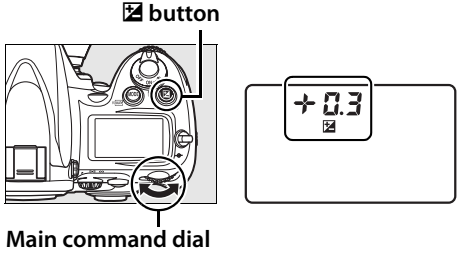
If **On** is selected for Custom Setting c1 (**Shutter-release button AE-L**, pg. 296), exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. For information on changing the role of the **AE-L/AF-L** button, see Custom Setting f7 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325).

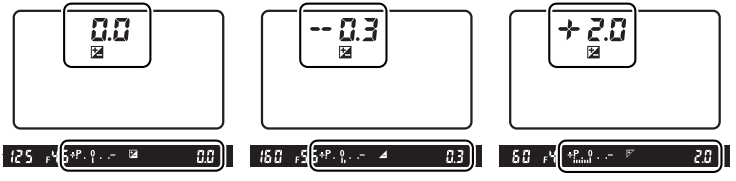
Exposure Compensation

Exposure compensation is used to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera, making pictures brighter or darker. It is most effective when used with center-weighted or spot metering (see page 112).

In exposure mode M, only the exposure information shown in the electronic analog exposure display is affected; shutter speed and aperture do not change.

To choose a value for exposure compensation, press the ± button and rotate the main command dial until the desired value is displayed in the control panel or viewfinder.





±0 EV (± button pressed)

–0.3 EV

+2.0 EV

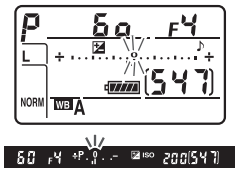
Exposure compensation can be set to values between –5 EV (underexposure) and +5 EV (overexposure) in increments of 1/3 EV. In general, choose positive values to make the subject brighter, negative values to make it darker.

–1 EV

No exposure compensation

+1 EV

At values other than ±0, the 0 at the center of the electronic analog exposure displays will flash and a ⊠ icon will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder.



Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to ±0. Exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

See Also

For information on choosing the size of the increments available for exposure compensation, see Custom Setting b3 (**Exp comp/fine tune**, pg. 292). For information on making adjustments to exposure compensation without pressing the ⊠ button, see Custom Setting b4 (**Easy exposure compensation**, pg. 293).

Bracketing

The camera offers three types of bracketing: exposure bracketing, flash bracketing, and white balance bracketing. In *exposure bracketing* (pg. 131), the camera varies exposure compensation with each shot, while in the case of *flash bracketing* (pg. 131), flash level is varied with each shot (i-TTL and, in the case of optional SB-900 and SB-800 flash units, auto aperture flash control modes only; see pages 377–380). Only one photograph is produced each time the shutter is released, meaning that several shots are required to complete the bracketing sequence. Exposure and flash bracketing are recommended in situations in which it is difficult to set exposure and there is not enough time to check results and adjust settings with each shot.

In *white balance bracketing* (pg. 135), the camera creates multiple images each time the shutter is released, each with a different white balance adjustment. Only one shot is required to complete the bracketing sequence. White balance bracketing is recommended when shooting under mixed lighting or experimenting with different white balance settings.

See Also

At default settings, the camera varies both exposure and flash level. Custom Setting e5 (**Auto bracketing set**, pg. 315) is used to choose the type of bracketing performed.

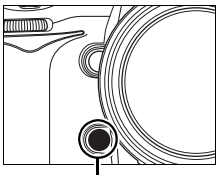
Changes to bracketing settings can be made using the **Fn** button (the default setting, see Custom Setting f5, **Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320), the depth-of-field preview button (Custom setting f6, **Assign preview button**), pg. 324), or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (Custom Setting f7, **Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325). Note that some "button press" options can not be combined with options using "+dials." The explanation that follows assumes that bracketing is assigned to the **Fn** button.

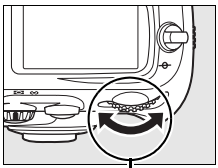
1 Select flash or exposure bracketing.

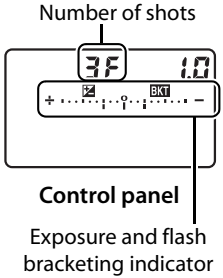
Choose the type of bracketing to be performed using Custom Setting e5 (**Auto bracketing set**, pg. 315). Choose **AE & flash** to vary both exposure and flash level (the default setting), **AE only** to vary only exposure, or **Flash only** to vary only flash level.

2 Choose the number of shots.

Pressing the **Fn** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence. The number of shots is shown in the control panel.



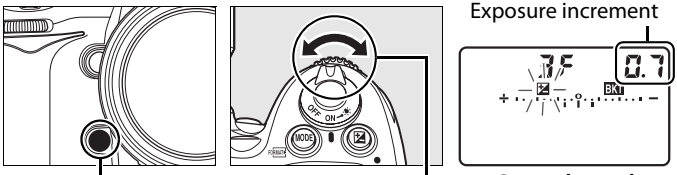




At settings other than zero, a BKT icon and exposure and flash bracketing indicator will be displayed in the control panel, and a ± icon will blink in the viewfinder.

3 Select an exposure increment.

Pressing the **Fn** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the exposure increment.



At default settings, the size of the increment can be chosen from 1/3, 2/3, and 1 EV. The bracketing programs with an increment of 1/3 EV are listed below.

Control panel display	No. of shots	Bracketing order (EVs)
0F 0.3	0	0
+3F 0.3	3	+0.3/0/+0.7
--3F 0.3	3	–0.3/–0.7/0
+2F 0.3	2	0/+0.3
--2F 0.3	2	0/–0.3
3F 0.3	3	0/–0.3/+0.3
5F 0.3	5	0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7
7F 0.3	7	0/–1.0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7/+1.0
9F 0.3	9	0/–1.3/–1.0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7/+1.0/+1.3

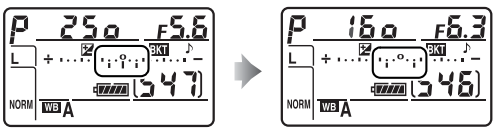
See Also

For information on choosing the size of the exposure increment, see Custom Setting b2 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**, pg. 292). For information on choosing the order in which bracketing is performed, see Custom Setting e7 (**Bracketing order**, pg. 317).

4 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

The camera will vary exposure and/or flash level shot-by-shot according to the bracketing program selected. Modifications to exposure are added to those made with exposure compensation (see page 128), making it possible to achieve exposure compensation values of more than 5 EV.

While bracketing is in effect, a bracketing progress indicator will be displayed in the control panel. A segment will disappear from the indicator after each shot.



No. shots: 3
Increment: 0.7

Display after first shot

Exposure increment: 0 EV

Exposure increment: –1 EV

Exposure increment: +1 EV

■■ *Canceling Bracketing*

To cancel bracketing, press the **Fn** button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero (OF) and BKT is no longer displayed in the control panel on top of the camera. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (pg. 196), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

Exposure and Flash Bracketing

In single frame and self-timer modes, one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, shooting will pause after the number of shots specified in the bracketing program have been taken. Shooting will resume the next time the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the memory card fills before all shots in the sequence have been taken, shooting can be resumed from the next shot in the sequence after the memory card has been replaced or shots have been deleted to make room on the memory card. If the camera is turned off before all shots in the sequence have been taken, bracketing will resume from the next shot in the sequence when the camera is turned on.

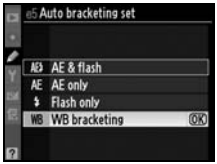
Exposure Bracketing

The camera modifies exposure by varying shutter speed and aperture (programmed auto), aperture (shutter-priority auto), or shutter speed (aperture-priority auto, manual exposure mode). When **On** is selected for **ISO sensitivity settings > ISO sensitivity auto control** in shooting menu, the camera will automatically vary ISO sensitivity for optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded.

Custom Setting e6 (**Auto bracketing (mode M)**, pg. 316) can be used to change how the camera performs exposure and flash bracketing in manual exposure mode. Bracketing can be performed by varying flash level together with shutter speed and/or aperture, or by varying flash level alone.

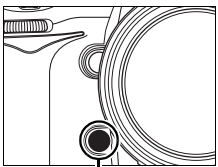
1 Select white balance bracketing.

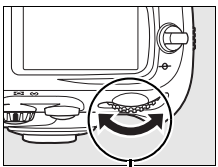
Choose **WB bracketing** for Custom Setting e5 **Auto bracketing set** (pg. 315).

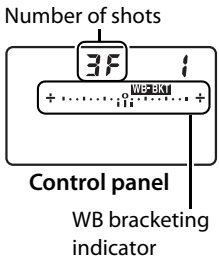


2 Choose the number of shots.

Pressing the **Fn** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence. The number of shots is shown in the control panel.



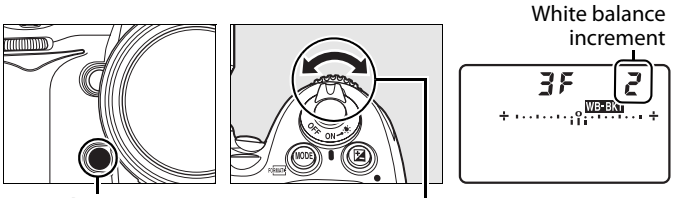




At settings other than zero, a WB BKT icon and WB bracketing indicator will appear in the control panel.

3 Select a white balance increment.

Pressing the **Fn** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the white balance adjustment. Each increment is roughly equivalent to 5 mired.



Choose from increments of 1 (5 mired), 2 (10 mired), or 3 (15 mired). Higher **B** values correspond to increased amounts of blue, higher **A** values to increased amounts of amber (pg. 144). The bracketing programs with an increment of 1 are listed below.

Control panel display	No. of shots	White balance increment	Bracketing order (EVs)
0F	0	1	0
b3F	3	1 B	1 B / 0 / 2 B
A3F	3	1 A	1 A / 2 A / 0
b2F	2	1 B	0 / 1 B
A2F	2	1 A	0 / 1 A
3F	3	1 A, 1 B	0 / 1 A / 1 B
5F	5	1 A, 1 B	0 / 2 A / 1 A / 1 B / 2 B
7F	7	1 A, 1 B	0 / 3 A / 2 A / 1 A / 1 B / 2 B / 3 B
9F	9	1 A, 1 B	0/4A/3A/2A/1A/ 1 B / 2 B / 3 B / 4 B

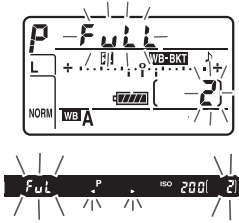
See Also

See page 145 for a definition of "mired."

4 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program, and each copy will have a different white balance. Modifications to white balance are added to the white balance adjustment made with white balance fine-tuning.

If the number of shots in the bracketing program is greater than the number of exposures remaining, the exposure count displays in the control panel and viewfinder will flash and the shutter release will be disabled. Shooting can begin when a new memory card is inserted.



■■ *Canceling Bracketing*

To cancel bracketing, press the **Fn** button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero (**OF**) and WB:BKT is no longer displayed in the control panel. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (pg. 196), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

White Balance Bracketing

White balance bracketing is not available at an image quality of NEF (RAW). Selecting **NEF (RAW)**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW)+JPEG basic** cancels white balance bracketing.

White balance bracketing affects only color temperature (the amber-blue axis in the white balance fine-tuning display, pg. 143). No adjustments are made on the green-magenta axis.

In self-timer mode (pg. 102), the number of copies specified in the white-balance program will be created each time the shutter is released.

If the camera is turned off while the memory card access lamp is lit, the camera will power off only after all photographs in the sequence have been recorded.

White Balance

– Keeping Colors True

The color of light reflected from an object varies with the color of the light source. The human brain is able to adapt to changes in the color of the light source, with the result that white objects appear white whether seen in the shade, direct sunlight, or under incandescent lighting. Unlike the film used in film cameras, digital cameras can mimic this adjustment by processing images according to the color of the light source. This is known as "white balance." This chapter covers white balance settings.

White Balance Options..... pg. 140

Fine-Tuning White Balance..... pg. 143

Choosing a Color Temperature..... pg. 147

Preset Manual ..... pg. 148

White Balance Options

For natural coloration, choose a white balance setting that matches the light source before shooting. The following options are available:

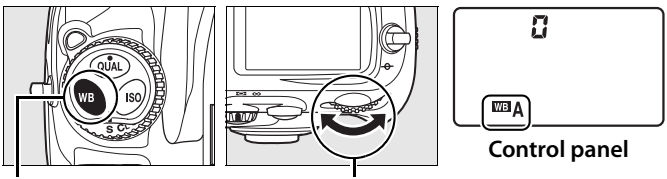
Option		Color temp. (K)	Description
AUTO	**Auto** (default)	3,500–8,000*	White balance is adjusted automatically using color temperature measured by image sensor and 1,005-segment RGB sensor. For best results, use type G or D lens. If built-in or optional flash is used, white balance reflects conditions in effect when the flash goes off.
	Incandescent	3,000*	Use under incandescent lighting.
	Fluorescent		Use under following seven light sources:
	Sodium-vapor lamps	2,700*	Use under sodium-vapor lighting (found in sports venues).
	Warm-white fluorescent	3,000*	Use under warm-white fluorescent lights.
	White fluorescent	3,700*	Use under white fluorescent lights.
	Cool-white fluorescent	4,200*	Use under cool-white fluorescent lights.
	Day white fluorescent	5,000*	Use under daylight white fluorescent lights.
	Daylight fluorescent	6,500*	Use under daylight fluorescent lights.
	High temp. mercury-vapor	7,200*	Use under high color temperature light sources (e.g. mercury-vapor lamps).
	Direct sunlight	5,200*	Use with subjects lit by direct sunlight.

Option	Color temp. (K)	Description
Flash	5,400*	Use with built-in or optional flash.
Cloudy	6,000*	Use in daylight under overcast skies.
Shade	8,000*	Use in daylight with subjects in the shade.
Choose color temp.	2,500–10,000	Choose color temperature from list of values (pg. 147).
PRE Preset manual	—	Use subject, light source, or existing photograph as reference for white balance (pg. 148).

* All values are approximate. Fine-tuning set to 0.

Auto white balance is recommended with most light sources. If the desired results can not be achieved with auto white balance, choose an option from the list above or use preset white balance.

White balance can be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the control panel.



WB button **Main command dial** **Control panel**

The White Balance Menu

White balance can also be adjusted using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu (pg. 268).

(Fluorescent)

Selecting (fluorescent) with the **WB** button and main command dial selects the type of bulb chosen for the **Fluorescent** option in the white balance menu (pg.268).

Studio Flash Lighting

Auto white balance may not produce the desired results with large studio flash units. Choose a color temperature, use preset white balance, or set white balance to **Flash** and use fine tuning to adjust white balance.

Color Temperature

The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5,000–5,500K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.

See Also

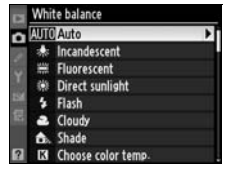
When **WB bracketing** is selected for Custom Setting e5 (**Auto bracketing set**, pg. 315), the camera will create several images each time the shutter is released. White balance will be varied with each image, "bracketing" the value currently selected for white balance. See page 130 for more information.

Fine-Tuning White Balance

White balance can be "fine tuned" to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate color cast into an image. White balance is fine tuned using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial.

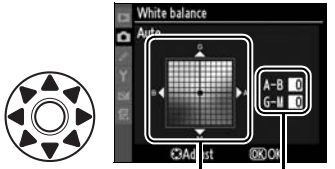
■■ *The White Balance Menu*

1 Select a white balance option.

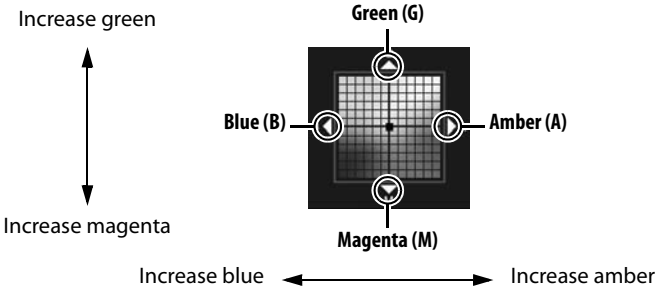


Select **White balance** in the shooting menu (pg. 268), then highlight a white balance option and press ▶. If an option other than **Fluorescent**, **Choose color temp.**, or **Preset manual** is selected, proceed to Step 2. If **Fluorescent** is selected, highlight a lighting type and press ▶. If **Choose color temp.** is selected, highlight a color temperature and press ▶. If **Preset manual** is selected, choose a preset as described on page 156 before proceeding.

2 Fine tune white balance.

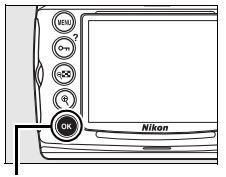


Use the multi selector to fine-tune white balance. White balance can be fine tuned on the amber (A)–blue (B) axis and the green (G)–magenta (M) axis. The horizontal (amber-blue) axis corresponds to color temperature, with each increment equivalent to about 5 mired. The vertical (green-magenta) axis has the similar effects to the corresponding **c**olor **c**ompensation (CC) filters.

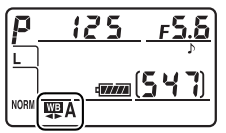


3 Press ⊛.

Press ⊛ to save settings and return to the shooting menu. If white balance has been fine-tuned on the A-B axis, a ◂▸ icon will be displayed in the control panel.



⊛ **button**



White Balance Fine Tuning

The colors on the fine-tuning axes are relative, not absolute. For example, moving the cursor to **B** (blue) when a "warm" setting such as ☀ (incandescent) is selected for white balance will make photographs slightly "colder" but will not actually make them blue.

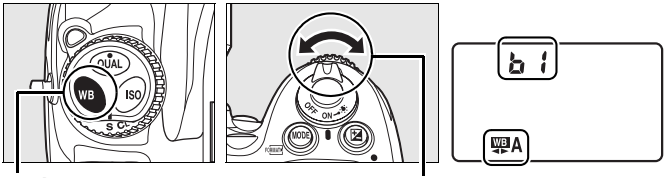
"Mired"

Any given change in color temperature produces a greater difference in color at low color temperatures than it would at higher color temperatures. For example, a change of 1000 K produces a much greater change in color at 3000 K than at 6000 K. Mired, calculated by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by 10^6, is a measure of color temperature that takes such variation into account, and as such is the unit used in color-temperature compensation filters. E.g.:

- 4000 K–3000 K (a difference of 1000 K)=83 mired
- 7000 K–6000 K (a difference of 1000 K)=24 mired

▮▮ *The WB Button*

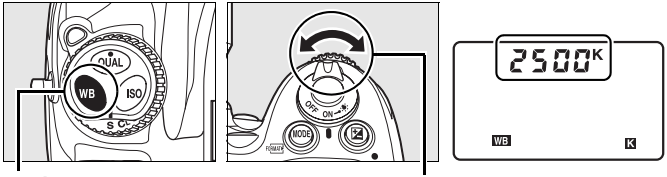
At settings other than K (**Choose color temp.**) and PRE (**Preset manual**), the **WB** button can be used to fine-tune white balance on the amber (A)–blue (B) axis (pg. 144; to fine-tune white balance when K or PRE is selected, use the shooting menu as described on page 144). Six settings in both directions are available; each increment is equivalent to about 5 mired (pg. 145). Press the **WB** button and rotate the sub-command dial until the desired value is displayed in the control panel. Rotating the sub-command dial to the left increases the amount of amber (A). Rotating the sub-command dial to the right increases the amount of blue (B). At settings other than 0, a ◂▸ icon appears in the control panel.



WB button **Sub-command dial** **Control panel**

Choosing a Color Temperature

When K (**Choose color temp.**) is selected for white balance, color temperature can be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The color temperature is displayed in the control panel:



WB button | **Sub-command dial** | **Control panel**

Choose Color Temperature

Note that the desired results will not be obtained with flash or fluorescent lighting. Choose ϟ (**Flash**) or (**Fluorescent**) for these sources. With other light sources, take a test shot to determine if the selected value is appropriate.

The White Balance Menu

Color temperature can also be selected in the white balance menu. Note that the color temperature with the **WB** button and the sub-command dial replaces the value selected in the white balance menu.

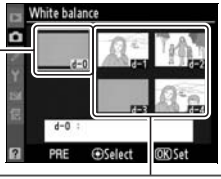
Preset Manual

Preset manual is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Two methods are available for setting preset white balance:

Method	Description
Direct measurement	Neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photograph and white balance is measured by camera (pg. 150).
Copy from existing photograph	White balance is copied from photo on memory card (pg. 154).

The camera can store up to five values for preset white balance in presets d-0 through d-4. A descriptive comment can be added to any white balance preset (pg. 158).

d-0
Stores last value measured for white balance (pg. 150). This preset is overwritten when a new value is measured.



d-1–d-4
Store values copied from d-0 (pg. 153).

Store values copied from images on memory card (pg. 154).

WB

White Balance Presets

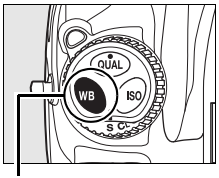
Changes to white balance presets apply to all shooting menu banks (pg. 269). A confirmation dialog will be displayed if the user attempts to change a white balance preset created in another shooting menu bank (no warning is displayed for preset d-0).

1 Light a reference object.

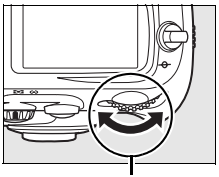
Place a neutral gray or white object under the lighting that will be used in the final photograph. In studio settings, a standard gray panel can be used as a reference object. Note that exposure is automatically increased by 1 EV when measuring white balance; in exposure mode M, adjust exposure so that the electronic analog exposure displays shows ±0 (pg. 123).

2 Set white balance to PRE (Preset manual).

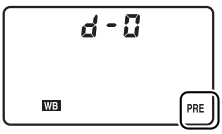
Press the **WB** button and rotate the main command dial until **PRE** is displayed in the control panel.



WB button



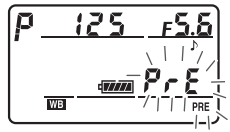
Main command dial



Control panel

3 Select direct measurement mode.

Release the **WB** button briefly and then press the button until the **PRE** icon in the control panel and viewfinder start to flash. A flashing PrE will also appear in the control panel and viewfinder. At default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds.



Control panel

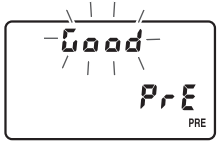
Viewfinder

4 Measure white balance.

Before the indicators stop flashing, frame the reference object so that it fills the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button all the way down. The camera will measure a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0. No photograph will be recorded; white balance can be measured accurately even when the camera is not in focus.

5 Check the results.

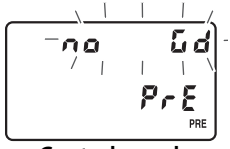
If the camera was able to measure a value for white balance, Good will flash in the control panel, while the viewfinder will show a flashing Gd. At default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds.



Control panel

Viewfinder

If lighting is too dark or too bright, the camera may be unable to measure white balance. A flashing **noGd** will appear in the control panel and viewfinder (at default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds). Press the shutter-release button halfway to return to Step 4 and measure white balance again.



Control panel

Viewfinder

6 Select preset d-0.

If the new value for preset white balance will be used immediately, select preset d-0 by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial until d-0 is displayed in the control panel.

Direct Measurement Mode

If no operations are performed while the displays are flashing, direct measurement mode will end in the time selected for Custom Setting c2 (**Auto meter-off delay**, pg. 296). The default setting is six seconds.

Preset d-0

The new value for white balance will be stored in preset d-0, automatically replacing the previous value for this preset (no confirmation dialog will be displayed). A thumbnail will be displayed in the preset white balance list.

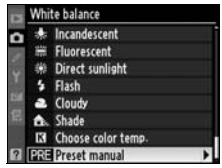
To use the new value for white balance, select preset d-0 (if no value has been measured for white balance before d-0 is selected, white balance will be set to a color temperature of 5,200 K, the same as **Direct sunlight**). The new white balance value will remain in preset d-0 until white balance is measured again. By copying preset d-0 to one of the other presets before measuring a new value for white balance, up to five white balance values can be stored (pg. 153).

■■ *Copying White Balance from d-0 to Presets d-1–d-4*

Follow the steps below to copy a measured value for white balance from d-0 to any of the other presets (d-1–d-4).

1 Select PRE (Preset manual).

Highlight **Preset manual** in the white balance menu (pg. 140) and press ▶.

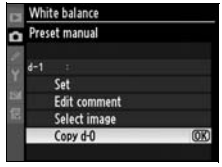


2 Select a destination.

Highlight the destination preset (d-1 to d-4) and press the center of the multi selector.

3 Copy d-0 to the selected preset.

Highlight **Copy d-0** and press ⓞ. If comment has been created for d-0 (pg. 158), the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.



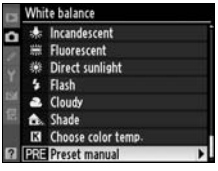
■■ *Copying White Balance from a Photograph (d-1–d-4 Only)*

Follow the steps below to copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card to a selected preset (d-1–d-4 only). Existing white balance values can not be copied to preset d-0.

---

1 **Select PRE (Preset manual).**

Highlight **Preset manual** in the white balance menu (pg. 140) and press ▶.



---

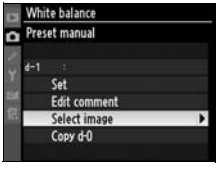
2 **Select a destination.**

Highlight the destination preset (d-1 to d-4) and press the center of the multi selector.

---

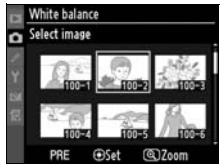
3 **Choose Select image.**

Highlight **Select image** and press ▶.



4 Highlight a source image.

Highlight the source image. To view the highlighted image full frame, press the 🔍 button.



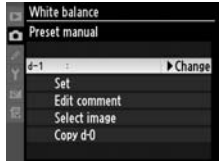
5 Copy white balance.

Press the center of the multi selector to copy the white balance value for the highlighted photograph to the selected preset. If the highlighted photograph has a comment (pg. 335), the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.

WB

Choosing a White Balance Preset

Press ▲ to highlight the current white balance preset (d-0–d-4) and press ▶ to select another preset.

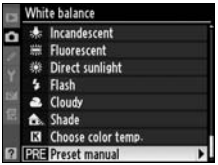


■■ *Selecting a White Balance Preset*

To set white balance to a preset value:

1 Select PRE (Preset manual).

Highlight **Preset manual** in the white balance menu (pg. 140) and press ▶.

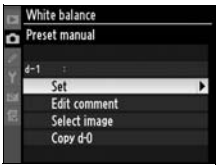


2 Select a preset.

Highlight the desired preset and press the center of the multi selector. To select the highlighted preset and display fine tuning menu (pg. 144) without completing the next step, press ⊛ instead of pressing the center of the multi selector.

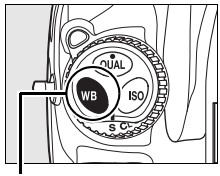
3 Select Set.

Highlight **Set** and press ▶. Fine tuning menu for the selected white balance preset is displayed (pg. 144).

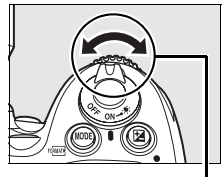


Selecting a White Balance Preset: the WB Button

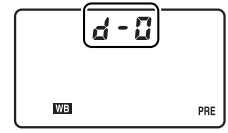
At a setting of **PRE** (**Preset manual**), presets can also be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The current preset is displayed in the control panel while the **WB** button is pressed.



WB button



Sub-command dial



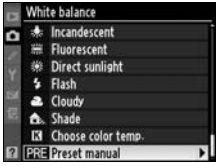
Control panel

■■ *Entering a Comment*

Follow the steps below to enter a descriptive comment of up to thirty-six characters for a selected white balance preset.

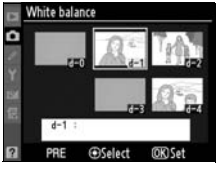
1 Select PRE (Preset manual).

Highlight **Preset manual** in the white balance menu (pg. 140) and press ▶.



2 Select a preset.

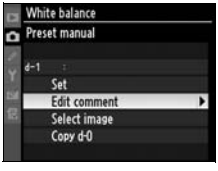
Highlight the desired preset and press the center of the multi selector.



WB

3 Select Edit comment.

Highlight **Edit comment** and press ▶.



4 Edit the comment.

Edit the comment as described on page 270.

Image Enhancement

This chapter describes how to optimize sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation and hue using Picture Controls, how to preserve detail in highlights and shadows using active D-Lighting, and how to choose a color space.

Picture Controls ..... **pg. 160**

Creating Custom Picture Controls ..... pg. 168

Active D-Lighting ..... **pg. 179**

Color Space ..... **pg. 181**

Picture Controls

Nikon's unique Picture Control system makes it possible to share image processing settings among compatible devices and software. Select from the Picture Controls provided with the camera to instantly adjust image processing settings, or make independent adjustments to sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue. These settings can be saved under new names as custom Picture Controls to be recalled or edited at will. Custom Picture Controls can also be saved to the memory card for use in compatible software, and software-created Picture Controls can be loaded into the camera. Any given set of Picture Controls will produce nearly the same results on all cameras that support the Nikon Picture Control system.

■■ *Using Picture Controls*

Picture Controls can be used as described below.

- **Select Nikon Picture Controls** (pg. 162): Select an existing Nikon Picture Control.
- **Modify existing Picture Controls** (pg. 164): Modify an existing Picture Control to create a combination of sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue for a particular scene or effect.
- **Create custom Picture Controls** (pg. 168): Store modified Picture Controls under unique names and recall or edit them as desired.
- **Share custom Picture Controls** (pg. 172): Custom Picture Controls created with the camera can be saved to the memory card for use in ViewNX (supplied) and other compatible software, or software-created custom Picture Controls can be loaded into the camera.
- **Manage custom Picture Controls** (pg. 175): Rename or delete custom Picture Controls.

Nikon Picture Controls Versus Custom Picture Controls

The Picture Controls supplied by Nikon are referred to as *Nikon Picture Controls*. In addition to the Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera, *optional Picture Controls* are available for download from Nikon websites. *Custom Picture Controls* are created through modifications to existing Nikon Picture Controls. Both Nikon and custom Picture Controls can be shared among compatible devices and software.

Selecting Nikon Picture Controls

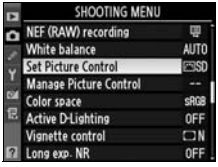
The camera offers four preset Nikon Picture Controls. Choose a Picture Control according to the subject or type of scene.

Option	Description
SD **Standard**	Standard processing for balanced results. Recommended for most situations.
NL **Neutral**	Minimal processing for natural results. Choose for photographs that will later be extensively processed or retouched.
VI **Vivid**	Pictures are enhanced for a vivid, photoprint effect. Choose for photographs that emphasize primary colors.
MC **Monochrome**	Take monochrome photographs.

■ *Choosing a Picture Control*

1 Select **Set Picture Control.**

In the shooting menu (pg. 268), highlight **Set Picture Control** and press ▶.

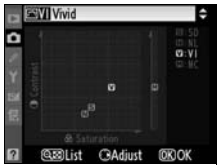


2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight the desired Picture Control and press OK.

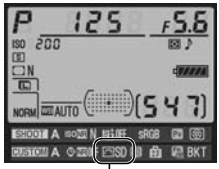
The Picture Control Grid

Pressing the button in Step 2 displays a Picture Control grid showing the contrast and saturation for the selected Picture Control in relation to the other Picture Controls (only contrast is displayed when **Monochrome** is selected). To select a different Picture Control, press ▲ or ▼, then press ▶ to display Picture Control options and press OK.



The Picture Control Indicator

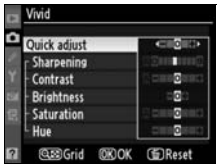
The current Picture Control is shown in the shooting information display when the INFO button is pressed. Picture Controls can also be selected in the shooting information display (pg. 15).



Picture Control indicator

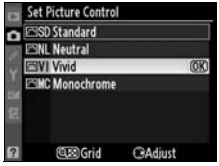
Modifying Existing Picture Controls

Existing Nikon or custom Picture Controls can be modified to suit the scene or the user's creative intent. Choose a balanced combination of settings using **Quick adjust**, or make manual adjustments to individual settings.



1 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight the desired Picture Control in the **Set Picture Control** menu (pg. 162) and press ▶.



2 Adjust settings.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired setting and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a value (pg. 165). Repeat this step until all settings have been adjusted, or select **Quick adjust** to choose a preset combination of settings. Default settings can be restored by pressing the 🗑 button.

3 Press ⓚ.

Modifications to Original Picture Controls

Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings are indicated by an asterisk ("✱") in the **Set Picture Control** menu.

■■ *Picture Control Settings*

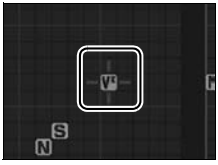
Option		Description
Quick adjust		Choose from options between **–2** and **+2** to reduce or exaggerate the effect of the selected Picture Control (note that this resets all manual adjustments). For example, choosing positive values for **Vivid** makes pictures more vivid. Not available with **Neutral**, **Monochrome**, or custom Picture Controls.
Manual adjustments (all Picture Controls)	**Sharpening**	Control the sharpness of outlines. Select **A** to adjust sharpening automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between **0** (no sharpening) and **9** (the higher the value, the greater the sharpening).
	Contrast	Select **A** to adjust contrast automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between **–3** and **+3** (choose lower values to prevent highlights in portrait subjects from being "washed out" in direct sunlight, higher values to preserve detail in misty landscapes and other low-contrast subjects).
	Brightness	Choose **–1** for reduced brightness, **+1** for enhanced brightness. Does not affect exposure.
Manual adjustments (non-monochrome only)	**Saturation**	Control the vividness of colors. Select **A** to adjust saturation automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between **–3** and **+3** (lower values reduce saturation and higher values increase it).
	Hue	Choose negative values (to a minimum of **–3**) to make reds more purple, blues more green, and greens more yellow, positive values (up to **+3**) to make reds more orange, greens more blue, and blues more purple.
Manual adjustments (monochrome only)	**Filter effects**	Simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. Choose from **Off** (the default setting), yellow, orange, red, and green (pg. 167).
	Toning	Choose the tint used in monochrome photographs from **B&W** (black-and-white, the default setting), **Sepia**, **Cyanotype** (blue-tinted monochrome), **Red**, **Yellow**, **Green**, **Blue Green**, **Blue**, **Purple Blue**, **Red Purple** (pg. 167).

Active D-Lighting

Contrast and **Brightness** can not be adjusted when Active D-Lighting (pg. 179) is on. Any manual adjustments currently in effect will be lost when Active D-Lighting is turned on.

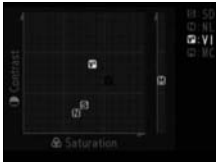
"A" (Auto)

Results for auto contrast and saturation vary with exposure and the position of the subject in the frame. Use a type G or D lens for best results. The icons for Picture Controls that use auto contrast and saturation are displayed in green in the Picture Control grid, and lines appear parallel to the axes of the grid.



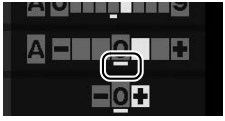
The Picture Control Grid

Pressing the ⍰ button in Step 2 displays a Picture Control grid showing the contrast and saturation for the selected Picture Control in relation to the other Picture Controls (only contrast is displayed when **Monochrome** is selected). Release the ⍰ button to return to the Picture Control menu.



Previous Settings

The line under the value display in the Picture Control setting menu indicates the previous value for the setting. Use this as a reference when adjusting settings.



Filter Effects (Monochrome Only)

The options in this menu simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. The following filter effects are available:

Option		Description
Y	Yellow	Enhances contrast. Can be used to tone down the brightness of the sky in landscape photographs. Orange produces more contrast than yellow, red more contrast than orange.
O	Orange	
R	Red	
G	Green	Softens skin tones. Can be used for portraits.

Note that the effects achieved with **Filter effects** are more pronounced than those produced by physical glass filters.

Toning (Monochrome Only)

Pressing ▼ when **Toning** is selected displays saturation options. Press ◀ or ▶ to adjust saturation. Saturation control is not available when **B&W** (black-and-white) is selected.

Custom Picture Controls

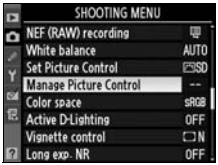
The options available with custom Picture Controls are the same as those on which the custom Picture Control was based.

Creating Custom Picture Controls

The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera can be modified and saved as custom Picture Controls.

1 Select **Manage Picture Control.**

In the shooting menu (pg. 268), highlight **Manage Picture Control** and press ▶.

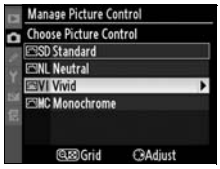


2 Select **Save/edit.**

Highlight **Save/edit** and press ▶.

3 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight an existing Picture Control and press ▶, or press ⊛ to proceed to step 5 to save a copy of the highlighted Picture Control without further modification.

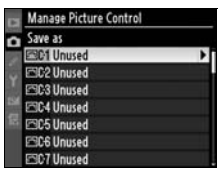


4 Edit the selected Picture Control.

See page 165 for more information. To abandon any changes and start over, press the 🗑 button. Press ⊛ when settings are complete.

5 Select a destination.

Choose a destination for the custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



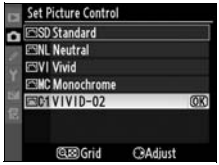
6 Name the Picture Control.

The text-entry dialog shown at right will be displayed. By default, new Picture Controls are named by adding a two-digit number (assigned automatically) to the name of the existing Picture Control. This name can be edited to create a new name as described below.

To move the cursor in the name area, press the button and press ◀ or ▶. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button.

Custom Picture Control names can be up to 19 characters long. Any characters after the 19th will be deleted.

After entering the name, press OK. The new Picture Control will appear in the Picture Control list.



Custom Picture Controls can be renamed at any time using the **Rename** option in the **Manage Picture Control** menu.

Custom Picture Controls

Custom Picture Controls are not affected by **Reset shooting menu** (pg. 271).

Custom Picture Controls do not have a **Quick adjust** option (pg. 165). Custom Picture Controls based on **Monochrome** have **Filter effects** and **Toning** options in place of **Saturation** and **Hue** controls.

The Original Picture Control Icon

The Nikon Picture Control on which the custom Picture Control is based is indicated by an icon in the top right corner of the edit display.

Original Picture Control icon

Sharing Custom Picture Controls

Custom Picture Controls created using the Picture Control Utility available with ViewNX or optional software such as Capture NX 2 can be copied to a memory card and loaded into the camera, or custom Picture Controls created with the camera can be copied to the memory card to be used in compatible cameras and software.

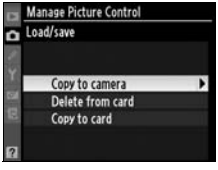
■■ *Copying Custom Picture Controls to the Camera*

1 Select **Load/save.**

In the **Manage Picture Control** menu, highlight **Load/save** and press ▶.

2 Select **Copy to camera.**

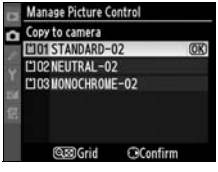
Highlight **Copy to camera** and press ▶.



3 Select a Picture Control.

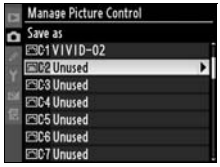
Highlight a custom Picture Control and either;

- press ▶ to view current Picture Control settings, or
- press ⊛ to proceed to Step 4.



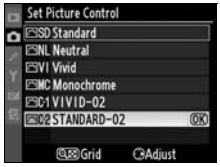
4 Select a destination.

Choose a destination for the custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



5 Name the Picture Control.

Name the Picture Control as described on page 170. The new Picture Control will appear in the Picture Control list and can be renamed at any time using the **Rename** option in the **Manage Picture Control** menu.

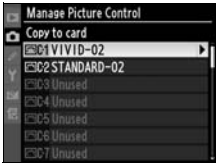


1 Select **Copy to card.**

After displaying the **Load/save** menu as described in Step 1 on page 172, highlight **Copy to card** and press ▶.

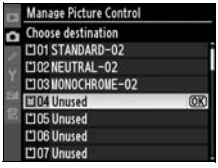
2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control and press ▶.



3 Choose a destination.

Choose a destination from slots 1 through 99 and press ⊛ to save the selected Picture Control to the memory card. Any Picture Controls that may already have been saved to the selected slot will be overwritten.



Saving Custom Picture Controls

Up to 99 custom Picture Controls can be stored on the memory card at any one time. The memory card can only be used to store user-created custom Picture Controls. The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera can not be copied to the memory card.

Managing Custom Picture Controls

Follow the steps below to rename or delete custom Picture Controls.

■■ *Renaming Custom Picture Controls*

1 Select **Rename.**

In the **Manage Picture Control** menu, highlight **Rename** and press ▶.

2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.

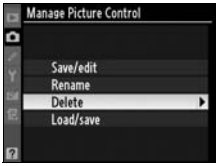
3 Rename the Picture Control.

Rename the Picture Control as described on page 170.

■■ *Deleting Custom Picture Controls from the Camera*

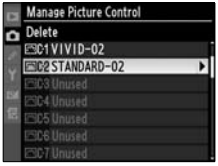
1 Select **Delete.**

In the **Manage Picture Control** menu, highlight **Delete** and press ▶.



2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



3 Select **Yes.**

Highlight **Yes** and press ⊛ to delete the selected Picture Control.

Nikon Picture Controls

The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera (**Standard**, **Neutral**, **Vivid**, and **Monochrome**) can not be renamed or deleted.

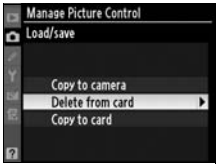
■■ *Deleting Custom Picture Controls from the Memory Card*

1 Select **Load/save.**

In the **Manage Picture Control** menu, highlight **Load/save** and press ▶.

2 Select **Delete from card.**

Highlight **Delete from card** and press ▶.



3 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control (slot1 through 99) and either;

- press ▶ to view current Picture Control settings, or

- press ⓞⓚ to display confirmation dialog shown at right.

4 Select Yes.

Highlight **Yes** and press ⓞⓚ to delete the selected Picture Control.

Active D-Lighting

Active D-Lighting preserves details in highlights and shadows, creating photographs with natural contrast. Use for high contrast scenes, for example when photographing brightly lit outdoor scenery through a door or window or taking pictures of shaded subjects on a sunny day.

Active D-Lighting off

Active D-Lighting: Auto

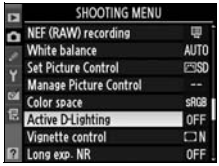
Active D-Lighting off

Active D-Lighting: High

To use active D-Lighting:

1 Select Active D-Lighting.

In the shooting menu (pg. 268), highlight **Active D-lighting** and press ▶.



2 Choose an option.

Highlight **Auto**, **Off**, **Low**, **Normal**, or **High** and press ⊛. Choose **Auto** to let the camera adjust D-Lighting automatically according to shooting conditions.

☑ Active D-Lighting

When Active D-Lighting is on, additional time will be required to record images and the capacity of the memory buffer will drop (pg. 424). Use matrix metering (pg. 112). Noise (grains, banding, mottling) may appear in photographs taken with Active D-Lighting at high ISO sensitivities. Active D-Lighting can not be used at ISO sensitivities of Hi 0.3 or above. The **Brightness** and **Contrast** Picture Control settings (pg. 165) can not be adjusted while active D-Lighting is in effect. In exposure mode M, an Active D-Lighting setting of **Auto** is equivalent to **Normal**.

☑ "Active D-Lighting" versus "D-Lighting"

The **Active D-Lighting** option in the shooting menu adjusts exposure before shooting to optimize the dynamic range, while the **D-Lighting** option in the retouch menu optimizes dynamic range in images after shooting.

The Shooting Information Display

Active D-Lighting can also be adjusted from the shooting information display (pg. 15).

Color Space

The color space determines the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. Choose a color space according to how photographs will be processed on leaving the camera.

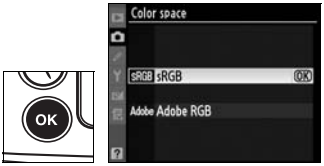
Option	Description
sRGB **sRGB** (default)	Choose for photographs that will be printed or used "as is," with no further modification.
Adobe **Adobe RGB**	This color space is capable of expressing a wider gamut of colors than sRGB, making it the preferred choice for images that will be extensively processed or retouched.

1 Select **Color space.**

Highlight **Color space** in the shooting menu (pg. 268) and press ▶.

2 Select a color space.

Highlight the desired option and press ⊛.



The Shooting Information Display

The color space can also be selected in the shooting information display (pg. 15).

Color Space

Color spaces define the correspondence between colors and the numeric values that represent them in a digital image file. The sRGB color space is widely used, while the Adobe RGB color space is typically used in publishing and commercial printing. sRGB is recommended when taking photographs that will be printed without modification or viewed in applications that do not support color management, or when taking photographs that will be printed with ExifPrint, the direct printing option on some household printers, or kiosk printing or other commercial print services. Adobe RGB photographs can also be printed using these options, but colors will not be as vivid.

JPEG photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space are Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 compliant; applications and printers that support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 will select the correct color space automatically. If the application or device does not support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0, select the appropriate color space manually. An ICC color profile is embedded in TIFF photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space, allowing applications that support color management to automatically select the correct color space. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application or device.

Nikon Software

ViewNX (supplied) and Capture NX 2 (available separately) automatically select the correct color space when opening photographs created with the D700.

Flash Photography

– Using the Built-in Flash

This chapter describes how to use the built-in flash.

The Built-in Flash ..... pg. 184

Using the Built-in Flash ..... pg. 185

Flash Modes ..... pg. 188

Flash Compensation ..... pg. 190

FV Lock ..... pg. 192

The Built-in Flash

The built-in flash has a Guide Number (GN) 17/56 (m/ft, ISO 200, 20 °C/68 °F) and can cover the field of view of a 24mm lens, or a 16mm lens in DX format. It supports i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR, which uses monitor pre-flashes to adjust flash output for balanced lighting not only when natural lighting is inadequate but when filling in shadows and backlit subjects or adding a catch light to the subject's eyes. The following types of i-TTL flash control are supported:

i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR: Speedlight emits series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by 1,005-segment RGB sensor and are analyzed in combination with range information from matrix metering system to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. If type G or D lens is used, distance information is included when calculating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; see pg. 210). Not available when spot metering is used.

Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR: Flash output adjusted to bring lighting in frame to standard level; brightness of background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.

ISO Sensitivity

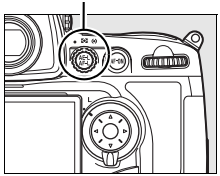
i-TTL flash control can be used at ISO sensitivities between 200 and 6400. At values over 6400 or under 200, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings.

Using the Built-in Flash

Follow these steps when using the built-in flash.

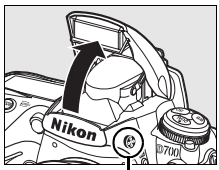
1 Choose a metering method (pg. 112).

Select matrix or center-weighted metering to activate i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR. Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.



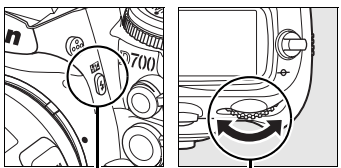
2 Press the flash pop-up button.

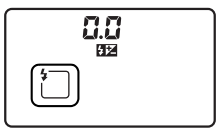
The built-in flash will pop up and begin charging. When the flash is fully charged, the flash-ready indicator (ϟ) will light.



3 Choose a flash mode.

Press the ϟ button and rotate the main command dial until the desired flash mode icon is displayed in the control panel (pg. 188).





4 Check exposure (shutter speed and aperture).

Press the shutter-release button halfway and check shutter speed and aperture. The settings available when the built-in flash is raised are listed below.

Mode	Shutter speed	Aperture	See page
P	Set automatically by camera (1/250 s–1/60 s) [1, 2]	Set automatically by camera	116
S	Value selected by user (1/250 s–30 s) [2]		118
A	Set automatically by camera (1/250 s–1/60 s) [1, 2]	Value selected by user [3]	119
M	Value selected by user (1/250 s–30 s) [2]		121

1 Shutter speed may be set as slow as 30 s in slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, and slow sync with red-eye reduction flash modes.

2 The built-in flash supports speeds of up to 1/320 s when **1/320 s (Auto FP)** is selected for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**, pp. 305–306). Optional SB-900, SB-800 and SB-600 flash units support speeds of up to 1/8,000 s at settings of **1/320 s (Auto FP)** or **1/250 s (Auto FP)**.

3 Flash range varies with aperture and ISO sensitivity. Consult table of flash ranges (pg. 427) when setting aperture in A and M modes.

At default settings, the effects of the flash can be previewed by pressing the depth-of-field preview button to emit a modeling preflash (pg. 315).

5 Take the picture.

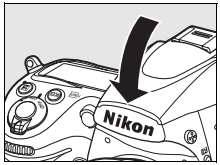
Compose the photograph, focus, and shoot. If the flash-ready indicator (⚡) blinks for about three seconds after the photograph is taken, the flash has fired at full output and the photograph may be underexposed. Check the results in the monitor. If the photograph is underexposed, adjust settings and try again.

See Also

See page 306 for information on **1/320 s (Auto FP)**.

Lowering the Built-in Flash

To save power when the flash is not in use, press it gently downward until the latch clicks into place.



The Built-in Flash

Use with lenses with focal lengths of 24–300 mm in FX format (pg. 374). Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows. The flash has a minimum range of 60 cm (2 ft.) and can not be used in the macro range of macro zoom lenses.

If the flash fires in continuous release mode (pg. 86), only one picture will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed.

The shutter release may be briefly disabled to protect the flash after it has been used for several consecutive shots. The flash can be used again after a short pause.

See Also

See page 192 for information on locking flash value (FV) for a metered subject before recomposing a photograph.

For information on choosing a flash sync speed, see Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**, pg. 305). For information on choosing the slowest shutter speed available when using the flash, see Custom Setting e2 (**Flash shutter speed**, pg. 308). For information on using the built-in flash in commander mode, see Custom Setting e3 (**Flash cntrl for built-in flash**, pg. 309).

See page 377 for information on using optional flash units. For information on the range of the built-in flash, see page 427.

Flash Modes

The camera supports the following flash modes:

Flash mode	Description
Front-curtain sync	This mode is recommended for most situations. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto modes, shutter speed will automatically be set to values between $^1/_{250}$ and $^1/_{60}$ s ($^1/_{8,000}$ to $^1/_{60}$ s when an optional flash unit is used with Auto FP High-Speed Sync) (pg. 377).
Red-eye reduction	Red-eye reduction lamp lights for approximately one second before main flash. Pupils in subject's eyes to contract, reducing "red-eye" effect sometimes caused by flash. Owing to one-second shutter-release delay, this mode is not recommended with moving subjects or in other situations in which quick shutter response is required. Avoid moving camera while red-eye reduction lamp is lit.
Red-eye reduction with slow sync	Combines red-eye reduction with slow sync. Use for portraits taken against a backdrop of night scenery. Available only in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.
Slow sync	Flash is combined with shutter speeds as slow as 30 s to capture both subject and background at night or under dim light. This mode is only available in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.

Flash mode	Description
Rear-curtain sync Slow rear-curtain sync	In shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, flash fires just before the shutter closes. Use to create effect of a stream of light behind moving objects. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto, slow rear-curtain sync is used to capture both subject and background. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.

Flash Control Mode

The shooting information display shows the flash control mode for the built-in flash (**Built-in**) and for optional flash units attached to the camera accessory shoe (**Optional**) as follows:

	i-TTL		Auto aperture (AA) [1]		Manual	
	Built-in	Optional	Built-in	Optional	Built-in	Optional
TTL [2]			—			
Auto FP (pg. 306)	—		—		—	
Repeating flash [2]	—	—	—	—		
Commander mode [2]			—			

1 Available with SB-900 and SB-800 only.

2 Flash control mode for built-in flash can be selected using Custom Setting e3 (**Flash cntrl for built-in flash**, pg. 309).

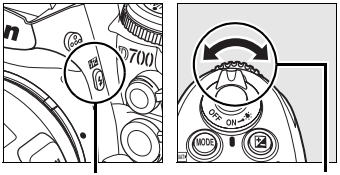
See Also

See Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**, pg. 305) for information on flash sync speeds as fast as $^{1}/_{320}$ s.

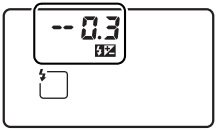
Flash Compensation

Flash compensation is used to alter flash output by from –3 EV to +1 EV in increments of 1/3 EV, changing the brightness of the main subject relative to the background. Flash output can be increased to make the main subject appear brighter, or reduced to prevent unwanted highlights or reflections.

Press the ⚡± button and rotate the sub-command dial until the desired value is displayed in the control panel. In general, choose positive values to make the main subject brighter, negative values to make it darker.



At values other than ±0, a ⚡± icon will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder after you release the ⚡± button. The current value for flash compensation can be confirmed by pressing the ⚡± button.



±0 EV (⚡± button pressed)

Normal flash output can be restored by setting flash compensation to ±0.0. Flash compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

–0.3 EV

+1.0 EV

Optional Flash Units

Flash compensation is also available with optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200 flash units.

See Also

For information on choosing the size of the increments available when setting flash compensation, see Custom Setting b3 (**Exp comp/fine tune**, pg. 292).

FV Lock

This feature is used to lock flash output, allowing photographs to be recomposed without changing the flash level and ensuring that flash output is appropriate to the subject even when the subject is not positioned in the center of the frame. Flash output is adjusted automatically for any changes in ISO sensitivity and aperture.

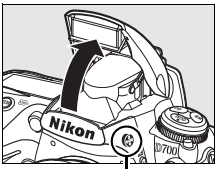
To use FV lock:

1 Assign FV lock to the Fn button.

Select **FV lock** for Custom Setting f5 (**Assign FUNC. button** > **FUNC. button press**, pg. 320).

2 Press the flash pop-up button.

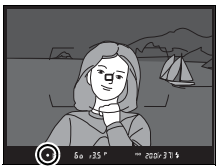
The built-in flash will pop up and begin charging.



Flash pop-up button

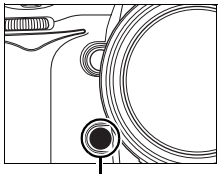
3 Focus.

Position the subject in the center of the frame and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus.



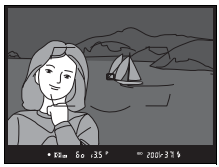
4 Lock flash level.

After confirming that the flash ready indicator (ϟ) is displayed in the viewfinder, press the **Fn** button. The flash will emit a monitor preflash to determine the appropriate flash level. Flash output will be locked at this level and FV lock icon (FL) will appear in the viewfinder.



Fn button

5 Recompose the photograph.



6 Take the photograph.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot. If desired, additional pictures can be taken without releasing FV lock.

7 Release FV lock.

Press the **Fn** button to release FV lock. Confirm that the FV lock icon (FL) is no longer displayed in the viewfinder.

Using FV Lock with the Built-in Flash

FV lock is only available with the built-in flash when **TTL** (the default option) is selected for Custom Setting e3 (**Flash cntrl for built-in flash**, pg. 309).

Using FV Lock with Optional Flash Units

FV lock is also available with SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200 flash units (available separately). Set the optional flash to TTL mode (the SB-900 and SB-800 can also be used in AA mode; see the flash manual for details). While FV lock is in effect, flash output will automatically be adjusted for changes in flash zoom head position.

When Commander mode is selected for Custom Setting e3 (**Flash cntrl for built-in flash**, pg. 309), FV lock can be used with remote SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash units if (a) any of the built-in flash, flash group A, or flash group B is in TTL mode, or (b) a flash group is composed entirely of SB-900 and SB-800 flash units in TTL or AA mode.

Metering

The metering areas for FV lock when using optional speedlight are as follows:

Speedlight	Flash mode	Metered area
Stand-alone flash unit	i-TTL	5-mm circle in center of frame
	AA	Area metered by flash exposure meter
Used with other flash units (Advanced Wireless Lighting)	i-TTL	Entire frame
	AA	Area metered by flash exposure meter
	A (master flash)	

See Also

For information on using the depth-of-field preview or **AE-L/AF-L** button for FV lock, see Custom Setting f6 (**Assign preview button**, pg. 324) or Custom Setting f7 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325).

Other Shooting Options

This chapter covers restoring default settings, making multiple exposures, interval timer photography, and using GPS units and non-CPU lenses.

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings ..... pg. 196

Multiple Exposure ..... pg. 198

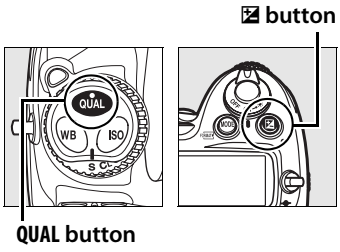
Interval Timer Photography ..... pg. 203

Non-CPU Lenses ..... pg. 210

Using a GPS Unit ..... pg. 213

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings

The camera settings listed below can be restored to default values by holding the **QUAL** and ⊠ buttons down together for more than two seconds (these buttons are marked by a green dot). The control panel turns off briefly while settings are reset.



Option	Default
Focus point	Center
Exposure mode	Programmed auto
Flexible program	Off
Exposure compensation	Off
AE hold	Off [1]

Option	Default
Bracketing	Off [2]
Flash mode	Front-curtain sync
Flash compensation	Off
FV lock	Off
Multiple exposure	Off

1 Custom Setting f7 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325) is unaffected.
2 Number of shots is reset to zero. Bracketing increment is reset to 1EV (exposure/flash bracketing) or 1 (white balance bracketing).

The following shooting-menu options will also be reset. Only settings in the bank currently selected using the **Shooting menu bank** option will be reset (pg. 269). Settings in the remaining banks are unaffected.

Option	Default
Image quality	JPEG Normal
Image size	Large

Option	Default
White balance	Auto *
ISO sensitivity	200

* Fine-tuning off.

If the current Picture Control has been modified, existing settings for the Picture Control will also be restored.

See Also

See page 418 for a list of default settings.

Multiple Exposure

Follow the steps below to record a series of two to ten exposures in a single photograph. Multiple exposures can be recorded at any image quality setting, and produce results with colors noticeably better than photographs combined in an imaging application because they make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor.

■■ *Creating a Multiple Exposure*

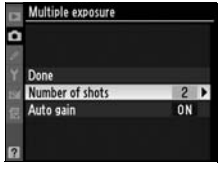
Note that at default settings, shooting will end and a multiple exposure will be recorded automatically if no operations are performed for 30 s.

1 **Select Multiple exposure.**

Highlight **Multiple exposure** in the shooting menu and press ▶.

2 **Select Number of shots.**

Highlight **Number of shots** and press ▶.

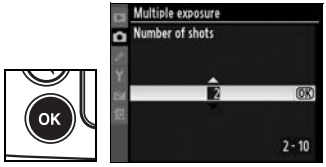


Extended Recording Times

For an interval between exposures of more than 30 s, select **On** for the **Image review** (pg. 265) option in the playback menu and extend the monitor-off delay for image review using Custom Setting c4 (**Monitor off delay**, pg. 297). The maximum interval between exposures is 30 s longer than the option selected for Custom Setting c4.

3 Select the number of shots.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the number of exposures that will be combined to form a single photograph and press ⊛.

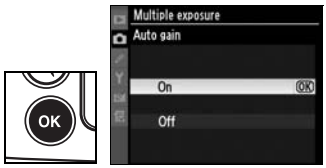


4 Select **Auto gain.**

Highlight **Auto gain** and press ▶.

5 Set gain.

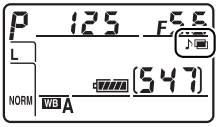
Highlight one of the following options and press ⊛.



Option	Description
On (default)	Gain adjusted according to number of exposures actually recorded (gain for each exposure is set to 1/2 for 2 exposures, 1/3 for 3 exposures, etc.).
Off	Gain is not adjusted when recording multiple exposure. Recommended if background is dark.

6 Select **Done.**

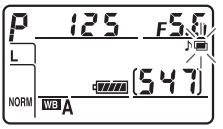
Highlight **Done** and press ⊛. A ▬ icon will be displayed in the control panel. To exit without taking a multiple exposure, select **Multiple exposure** > **Reset** in the shooting menu.



7 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

In continuous high-speed and continuous low-speed release modes (pg. 84), the camera records all exposures in a single burst. In single-frame release mode, one photograph will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed; continue shooting until all exposures have been recorded (for information on interrupting a multiple exposure before all photographs are recorded, see page 202).

The ▬ icon will blink until shooting ends. When shooting ends, multiple exposure mode will end and the ▬ icon will no longer be displayed. Repeat steps 1–7 to take additional multiple exposures.



Multiple Exposure

Do not remove or replace the memory card while recording a multiple exposure.

Live view (pg. 89) can not be used to record multiple exposures.

The information listed in the playback photo information display (including date of recording and camera orientation) is for the first shot in the multiple exposure.

If no operations are performed for 30 s after the monitor has turned off during playback or menu operations, shooting will end and a multiple exposure will be created from the exposures that have been recorded to that point.

Interval Timer Photography

If interval timer photography is activated before the first exposure is taken, the camera will record exposures at the selected interval until the number of exposures specified in the multiple exposure menu have been taken (the number of shots listed in the interval timer shooting menu is ignored). These exposures will then be recorded as a single photograph and multiple exposure mode and interval timer shooting will end. Cancelling multiple exposure cancels interval timer shooting.

Other Settings

While multiple exposure mode is in effect, memory cards can not be formatted and the following can not be changed: bracketing and shooting menu options other than **White balance** and **Interval timer shooting** (note that **Interval timer shooting** can only be adjusted before the first exposure is taken). The **Lock mirror up for cleaning** and **Dust off ref photo** options in the setup menu can not used.

▮▮ *Interrupting Multiple Exposures*

Selecting **Multiple exposure** in the shooting menu while a multiple exposure is being recorded displays the options shown at right. To interrupt a multiple exposure before the specified number of exposures have been taken, highlight **Cancel** and press ⊛. If shooting ends before the specified number of exposures have been taken, a multiple exposure will be created from the exposures that have been recorded to that point. If **Auto gain** is on, gain will be adjusted to reflect the number of exposures actually recorded. Note that shooting will end automatically if:

- A two-button reset is performed (pg. 196)
- The camera is turned off
- The battery is exhausted
- Pictures are deleted

Interval Timer Photography

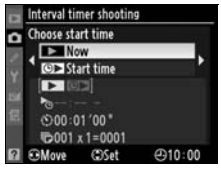
The camera is equipped to take photographs automatically at preset intervals.

1 Select **Interval timer shooting.**

Highlight **Interval timer shooting** in the shooting menu (pg. 268) and press ▶.

2 Select a starting trigger.

Highlight one of the following **Choose start time** options and press ▶.



- **Now**: Shooting begins about 3 s after settings are completed (proceed to Step 4).
- **Start time**: Choose a start time (see Step 3).

☑ Before Shooting

Choose single-frame (**S**), continuous low speed (**CL**), or continuous high speed (**CH**) release mode when using the interval timer. Before beginning interval timer photography, take a test shot at current settings and view the results in the monitor. Remember that the camera will focus before each shot—no shots will be taken if the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF.

Before choosing a starting time, select **World time** in the setup menu and make sure that the camera clock is set to the correct time and date (pg. 38).

Use of a tripod is recommended. Mount the camera on a tripod before shooting begins.

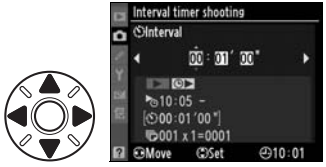
To ensure that shooting is not interrupted, be sure the battery is fully charged.

3 Choose a start time.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours or minutes; press ▲ or ▼ to change. The starting time is not displayed if **Now** is selected for **Choose start time**.

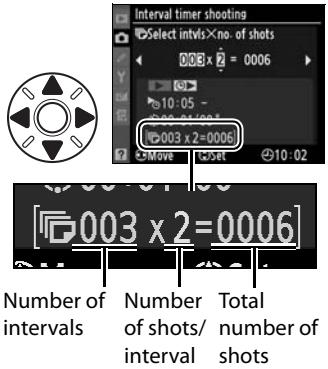
4 Choose an interval.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours, minutes, or seconds; press ▲ or ▼ to change. Note that the camera will not be able to take photographs at the specified interval if it is shorter than the shutter speed or the time required to record images.



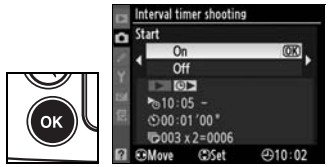
5 Choose the number of intervals and number of shots per interval.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight number of intervals or number of shots; press ▲ or ▼ to change. The total number of shots that will be taken is displayed to the right.



6 Start shooting.

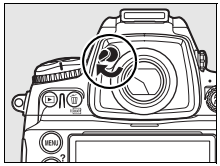
Highlight **Start** > **On** and press OK (to return to the shooting menu without starting the interval timer, highlight **Start** > **Off** and press OK). The first series of shots will be taken at the specified starting time. Shooting will continue at the selected interval until all shots have been taken.



A message will be displayed in the monitor one minute before each series of shots is taken. If shooting can not proceed at current settings (for example, if a shutter speed of **bulb** is currently selected in manual exposure mode or the start time is in less than a minute), a warning will be displayed in the monitor.

Close the Viewfinder Eyepiece Shutter

Close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure when shooting with your eye away from the viewfinder.



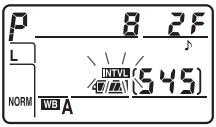
Out of Memory

If the memory card is full, the interval timer will remain active but no pictures will be taken. Resume shooting (pg. 207) after deleting some pictures or turning the camera off and inserting another memory card.

Bracketing

Adjust bracketing settings before starting interval timer photography. If exposure and/or flash bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots in the bracketing program at each interval, regardless of the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu. If white balance bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take one shot at each interval and process it to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.

During Shooting



During interval timer photography, the INTVL icon in the control panel will blink. Immediately before the next shooting interval begins, the shutter speed display will show the number of intervals remaining, and the aperture display will show the number of shots remaining in the current interval. At other times, the number of intervals remaining and the number of shots in each interval can be viewed by pressing the shutter-release button halfway (once the button is released, the shutter speed and aperture will be displayed until the exposure meters turn off).

To view current interval timer settings, select **Interval timer shooting** between shots. While interval timer photography is in progress, the interval timer menu will show the starting time, the current time, and the number of intervals and shots remaining. None of these items can be changed while interval timer photography is in progress.

▮▮ *Pausing Interval Timer Photography*

Interval time photography can be paused by:

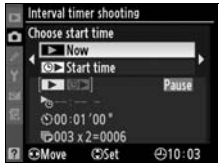
- Pressing the ⓚ button between intervals
- Highlighting **Start** > **Pause** in the interval timer menu and pressing ⓚ
- Turning the camera off and then on again (if desired, the memory card can be replaced while the camera is off)
- Selecting live view (Lv), self-timer (⏲), or mirror-up (**MUP**) release modes

To resume shooting:

---

1 **Choose a new starting trigger.**

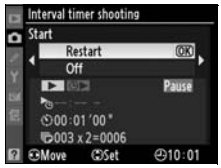
Choose a new starting trigger and start time as described on page 203.



---

2 **Resume shooting.**

Highlight **Start** > **Restart** and press ⓚ. Note that if interval timer photography was paused during shooting, any shots remaining in the current interval will be canceled.



■■ *Interrupting Interval Timer Photography*

Interval timer shooting will end automatically if the battery is exhausted. Interval timer photography can also be ended by:

- Selecting **Start** > **Off** in the interval timer menu
- Performing a two button reset (pg. 196)
- Selecting **Reset shooting menu** in the shooting menu (pg. 271)
- Changing bracketing settings (pg. 130)

Normal shooting will resume when interval timer photography ends.

■■ *No Photograph*

Photographs will not be taken if the previous photograph has yet to be taken, the memory buffer or memory card is full, or the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF (note that the camera focuses again before each shot).

Release Mode

Regardless of the release mode selected, the camera will take the specified number of shots at each interval. In **CH** (continuous high speed) mode, photographs will be taken at a rate of up to 5 shots per second. In **S** (single frame) and **CL** (continuous low-speed) modes, photographs will be taken at the rate chosen for Custom Setting d4 (**CL mode shooting speed**, pg. 299).

Using the Monitor

Pictures can be played back and shooting and menu settings can be adjusted freely while interval timer photography is in progress. The monitor will turn off automatically about four seconds before each interval.

Shooting Menu Banks

Changes to interval timer settings apply to all shooting menu banks (pg. 269). If shooting menu settings are reset using the **Reset shooting menu** item in the shooting menu (pg. 271), interval timer settings will be reset as follows:

- Choose start time: Now
- Interval: 00:01':00"
- Number of intervals: 1
- Number of shots: 1
- Start shooting: Off

Non-CPU Lenses

By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture), the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions when using a non-CPU lens. If the focal length of the lens is known:

- Automatic power zoom can be used with SB-900, SB-800, and SB-600 Speedlights (available separately)
- Lens focal length is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

When the maximum aperture of the lens is known:

- The aperture value is displayed in the control panel and viewfinder
- Flash level is adjusted for changes in aperture
- Aperture is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

Specifying both the focal length and maximum aperture of the lens:

- Enables color matrix metering (note that it may be necessary to use center-weighted or spot metering to achieve accurate results with some lenses, including Reflex-Nikkor lenses)
- Improves the precision of center-weighted and spot metering and i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR

Focal Length Not Listed

If the correct focal length is not listed, choose the closest value greater than the actual focal length of the lens.

Zoom Lenses

Lens data are not adjusted when non-CPU lenses are zoomed in or out. After changing the zoom position, select new values for lens focal length and maximum aperture.

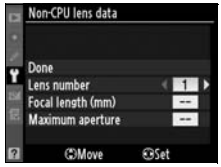
■■ *The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu*

1 Select **Non-CPU lens data.**

Highlight **Non-CPU lens data** in the setup menu (pg. 331) and press ▶.

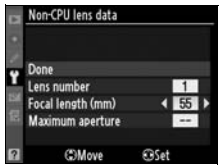
2 Select a lens number.

Highlight **Lens number** and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a lens number between 1 and 9.



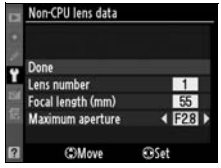
3 Select a focal length.

Highlight **Focal length (mm)** and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a focal length between 6 and 4,000 mm.

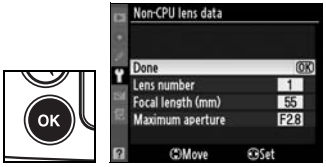


4 Select a maximum aperture.

Highlight **Maximum aperture** and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a maximum aperture between f/1.2 and f/22. The maximum aperture for teleconverters is the combined maximum aperture of the teleconverter and lens.



5 Select **Done.**



Highlight **Done** and press ⊛. The specified focal length and aperture will be stored under the chosen lens number. This combination of focal length and aperture can be recalled at any time by selecting the lens number using camera controls as described below.

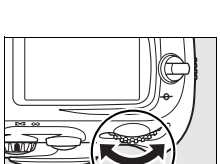
■ *Choosing a Lens Number Using Camera Controls*

1 Assign non-CPU lens number selection to a camera control.

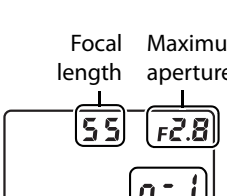
Select **Choose non-CPU lens number** as the "+command dials" option for a camera control in the Custom Settings menu. Non-CPU lens number selection can be assigned to the **Fn** button (Custom Setting f5, **Assign FUNC. button**, pg. 320), the depth-of-field preview button (Custom Setting f6, **Assign preview button**, pg. 324), or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (Custom Setting f7, **Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, pg. 325).

2 Use the selected control to choose a lens number.

Press the selected button and rotate the main command dial until the desired lens number is displayed in the control panel.

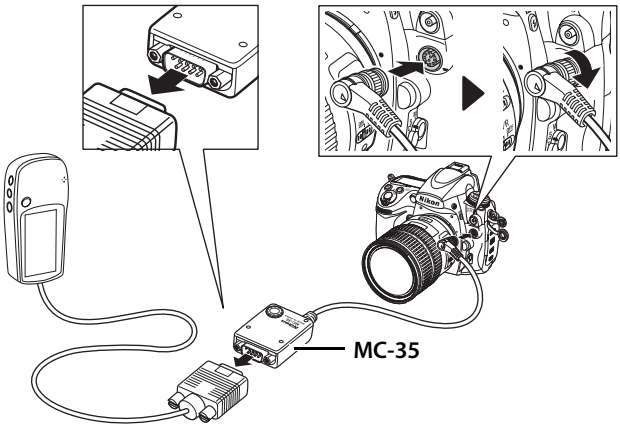


Main command dial

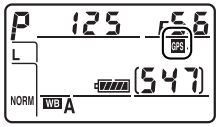


Using a GPS Unit

Optional Garmin GPS units that conform to version 2.01 or 3.01 of the National Marine Electronics Association NMEA0183 data format can be connected to the camera's ten-pin remote terminal using an MC-35 GPS adapter cord (available separately; pg. 389), allowing information on the camera's current position to be recorded when photographs are taken. Operation has been confirmed with Garmin eTrex and Garmin geko series devices equipped with a PC interface cable connector. These devices connect to the MC-35 using a cable with a D-sub 9-pin connector provided by the manufacturer of the GPS device. See the MC-35 instruction manual for details. Before turning the camera on, set the GPS device to NMEA mode (4800 baud).

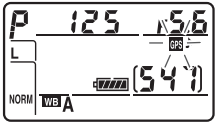


When the camera establishes communication with a GPS device, a GPS icon will be displayed in the control panel. Photo information for pictures taken while the GPS icon is displayed will include an additional page (pg. 229) recording the current latitude, longitude, altitude, Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), and heading. If no data are received from the GPS unit for two seconds, the GPS icon will clear from the display and the camera will stop recording GPS information.



GPS Data

GPS data are only recorded when the GPS icon is displayed. Confirm that the GPS icon is displayed in the control panel before shoot-ing. A flashing GPS icon indicates that the GPS device is searching for a signal; pictures taken while the GPS icon is flashing will not include GPS data.



■■ *Setup Menu Options*

The **GPS** item in the setup menu contains the options listed below.

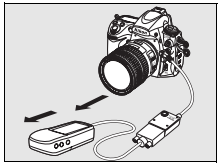
- **Auto meter off**: Choose whether or not the exposure meters will turn off automatically when a GPS unit is attached.

Option	Description
Enable (default)	Exposure meters will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for the period specified in Custom Setting c2 (**Auto meter-off delay**). This reduces the drain on the battery but may prevent GPS data from being recorded if the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down without pausing.
Disable	Exposure meters will not turn off while a GPS unit is connected; GPS data will always be recorded.

- **Position**: This item is only available if a GPS device is connected, when it displays the current latitude, longitude, altitude, Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), and heading as reported by the GPS device.

Heading

The heading is only recorded if the GPS device is equipped with a digital compass. Keep the GPS device pointing in the same direction as the lens and at least 20cm (8in.) from the camera.



Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)

UTC data is provided by the GPS device and is independent of the camera clock.

More About Playback

– Playback Options

This chapter describes how to play back photographs and details the operations that can be performed during playback.

Full-Frame Playback..... pg. 218

Photo Information ..... pg. 220

Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback ..... pg. 232

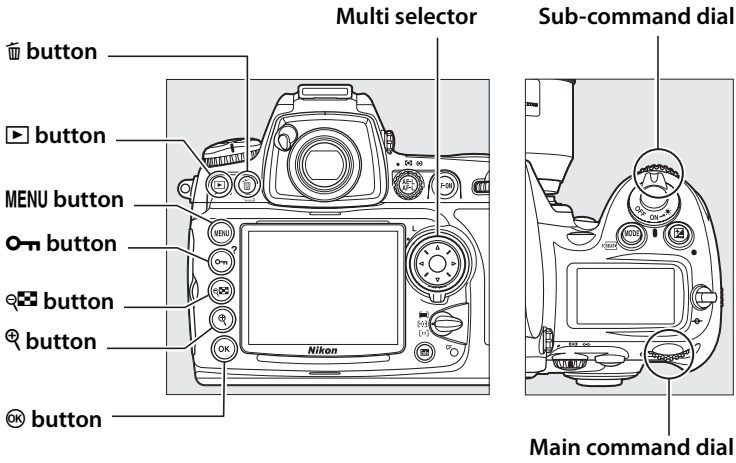
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom ..... pg. 234

Protecting Photographs from Deletion ..... pg. 235

Deleting Individual Photographs..... pg. 236

Full-Frame Playback

To play photographs back, press the ▶ button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.



Rotate Tall

To display "tall" (portrait-orientation) photographs in tall orientation, select **On** for the **Rotate tall** option in the playback menu (pg. 265). Note that because the camera itself is already in the appropriate orientation during shooting, images are not rotated automatically during image review (pg. 219).

To	Use	Description
View additional photographs		Press ▶ to view photographs in order recorded, ◀ to view photographs in reverse order.
View photo information		Press ▲ or ▼ to view information about current photograph (pg. 220).
View thumbnails		See page 232 for more information on the thumbnail display.
Zoom in on photograph		See page 234 for more information on playback zoom.
Delete images		Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press 🗑 again to delete photo.
Change protect status		To protect image, or to remove protection from protected image, press O-n button (pg. 235).
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 259 for more information.

Image Review

When **On** is selected for **Image review** in the playback menu (pg. 265), photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor for about 4 s (the default setting) after shooting. In single-frame, self-timer, and mirror-up release modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous release mode, display begins when shooting ends, with the first photograph in the current series displayed.

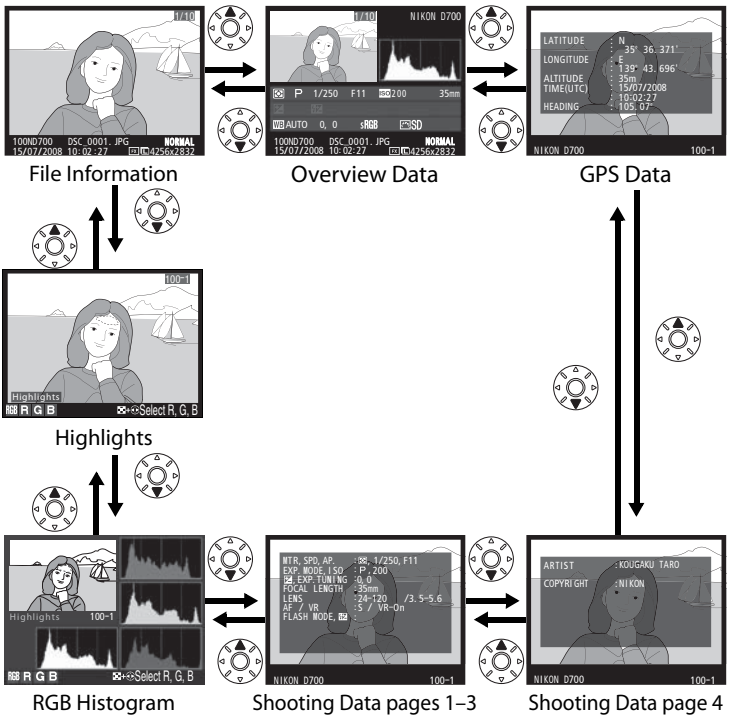
See Also

For information on choosing how long the monitor will remain on when no operations are performed, see Custom Setting c4 (**Monitor off delay**, pg. 297).

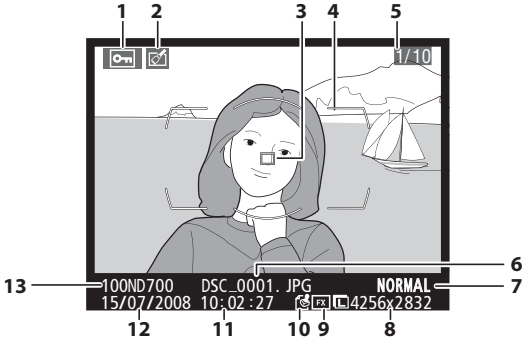
The roles of the multi selector buttons can be reversed, so that the ▲ and ▼ buttons display other images and the ◀ and ▶ buttons control photo information. See Custom Setting f4 (**Photo info/playback**, pg. 320) for details.

Photo Information

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in full-frame playback. There are up to 9 pages of information for each photo. Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through photo information as shown below. Note that shooting data, RGB histograms, and highlights are only displayed if corresponding option is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264; shooting data page 4 is only displayed if copyright information was recorded with the photograph as described on page 343). GPS data are only displayed if a GPS device was used when the photo was taken.



■■ File Information

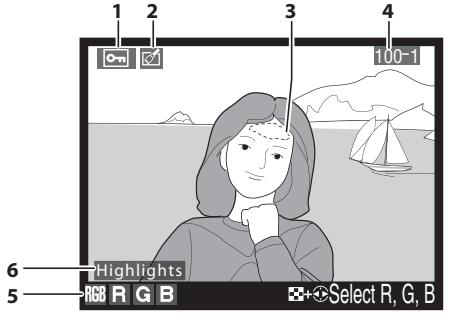


1	Protect status 235	**7**	Image quality 64
2	Retouch indicator..... 349	**8**	Image size..... 69
3	Focus point [1] 264	**9**	Image area [2] 58
4	AF area brackets 45, 94	**10**	Image authentication.....342
5	Frame number/ total number of frames	**11**	Time of recording 38
6	File name..... 274	**12**	Date of recording..... 38
		13	Folder name.....272

1 Display only if **Focus point** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).

2 FX is displayed if **FX format (36 × 24)** was selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu. If **DX format (24 × 16)** was selected, DX will be displayed in yellow.

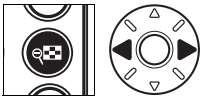
■■ *Highlights* [1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 Image highlights [2] 264
4 Folder number–frame number [3] 272
5 Current channel [2]
6 Highlight display indicator 264

1 Displayed only if **Highlights** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).

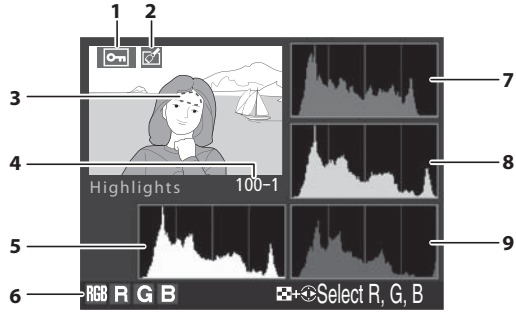
2 Blinking areas indicate highlights for current channel. Press ◀ or ▶ while pressing ⊖ button to cycle through channels as follows:



RGB (all channels) ⟷ R (red) ⟷ G (green) ⟷ B (blue)

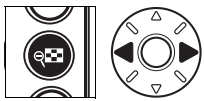
3 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

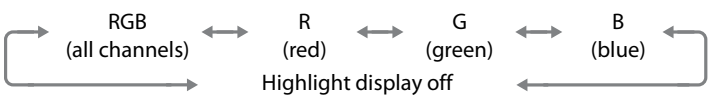
■■ RGB Histogram [1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 Image highlights [2]
4 Folder number–frame number [3] 272
5 Histogram (RGB channel) [4]. In all histograms, horizontal axis gives pixel brightness, vertical axis number of pixels.
6 Current channel [2]
7 Histogram (red channel) [4]
8 Histogram (green channel) [4]
9 Histogram (blue channel) [4]

1 Displayed only if **RGB histogram** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).
2 Blinking areas indicate highlights for current channel. Press ◀ or ▶ while pressing button to cycle through channels as follows:

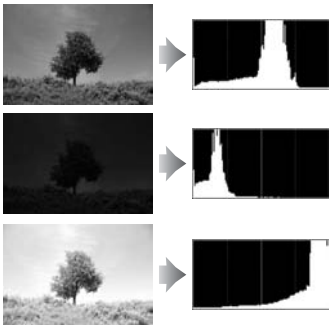




3 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

4 Some sample histograms are shown below:

- If the image contains objects with a wide range of brightnesses, the distribution of tones will be relatively even.
- If the image is dark, tone distribution will be shifted to the left.
- If the image is bright, tone distribution will be shifted to the right.

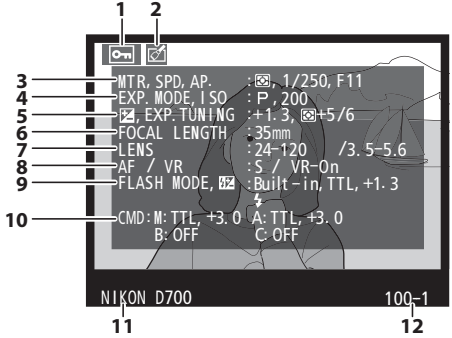


Increasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution of tones to the right, while decreasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution to the left. Histograms can provide a rough idea of overall exposure when bright ambient lighting makes it difficult to see photographs in the monitor.

Histograms

Camera histograms are intended as a guide only and may differ from those displayed in imaging applications.

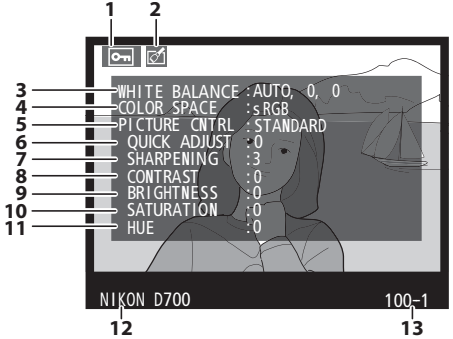
■■ *Shooting Data Page 1* [1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 Metering method 112
Shutter speed 118, 121
Aperture 119, 121
4 Exposure mode 114
ISO sensitivity [2] 106
5 Exposure compensation 128
Optimal exposure tuning [3] 294
6 Focal length 376
7 Lens data 210
8 Focus mode 72
Lens VR (vibration reduction) [4] 37
9 Flash mode 185
Flash compensation 190
10 Commander mode/group name/flash control mode/flash compensation 311
11 Camera name
12 Folder number–frame number [5] 272

1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).
2 Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.
3 Displayed if Custom Setting b6 (**Fine tune optimal exposure**, pg. 294) has been set to a value other than zero for any metering method.
4 Displayed only if VR lens is attached.
5 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

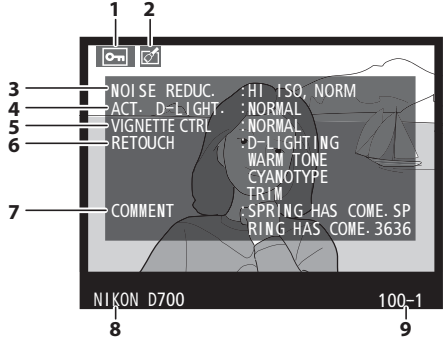
■■ *Shooting Data Page 2* [1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 White balance 139
Color temperature 147
White balance fine-tuning 143
Preset manual 148
4 Color space 181
5 Picture Control 162
6 Quick adjust [2] 165
Original Picture Control [3] 162
7 Sharpening 165
8 Contrast 165
9 Brightness 165
10 Saturation [4] 165
Filter effects [5] 165
11 Hue [4] 165
Toning [5] 165
12 Camera name
13 Folder number–frame number [6] 272

1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).
2 **Standard** and **Vivid** Picture Controls only.
3 **Neutral**, **Monochrome**, and custom Picture Controls.
4 Not displayed with monochrome Picture Controls.
5 Monochrome Picture Controls only.
6 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

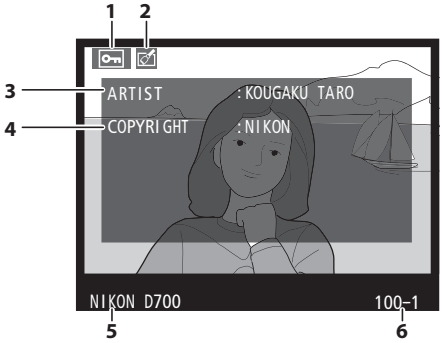
■■ *Shooting Data Page 3* [1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 High ISO noise reduction 278
Long exposure noise reduction 277
4 Active D-Lighting 179
5 Vignette control 276
6 Retouch history 349
7 Image comment 335
8 Camera name
9 Folder number–frame number [2] 272

1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264).
2 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

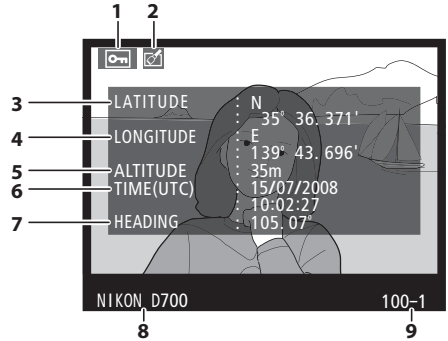
■■ *Shooting Data Page 4*[1]



1 Protect status 235
2 Retouch indicator 349
3 Name of photographer 343
4 Copyright holder 343
5 Camera name
6 Folder number–frame number[2] 272

1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (pg. 264) and copyright information was appended to photograph (pg. 343).
2 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

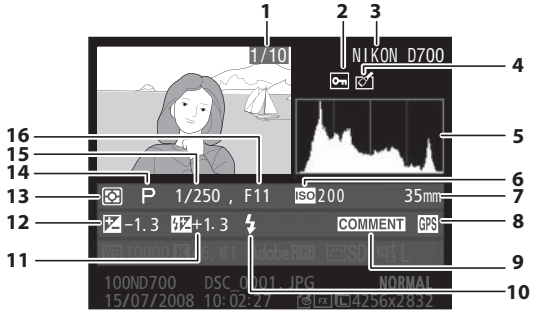
■■ *GPS Data*[1]



1 Protect status..... 235
2 Retouch indicator..... 349
3 Latitude
4 Longitude
5 Altitude
6 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)
7 Heading [2]
8 Camera name
9 Folder number–frame number [3].....272

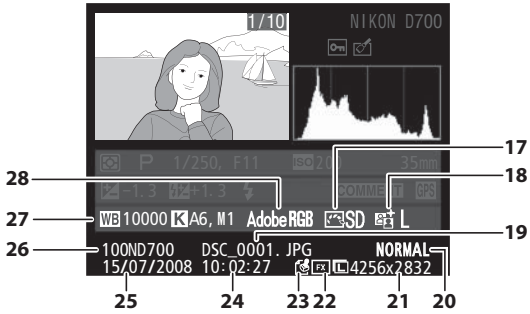
1 Displayed only if GPS device was used when photo was taken (pg. 213).
2 Displayed only if GPS device is equipped with electronic compass.
3 Displayed in yellow if picture was taken with **DX format (24 × 16)** selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu.

Overview Data



1 Frame number/ total number of frames
2 Protect status 235
3 Camera name
4 Retouch indicator 349
5 Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the image (pg. 224). Horizontal axis corresponds to pixel brightness, vertical axis shows number of pixels of each brightness in image.
6 ISO sensitivity [1] 106
7 Focal length 376
8 GPS data indicator 213
9 Image comment indicator 335
10 Flash mode 185
11 Flash compensation 190
12 Exposure compensation 128
13 Metering method 112
14 Exposure mode 114
15 Shutter speed 118, 121
16 Aperture 119, 121

1 Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.

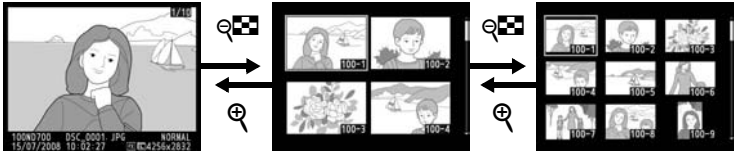


17	Picture Control 162	**24**	Time of recording 38
18	Active D-Lighting 180	**25**	Date of recording..... 38
19	File name..... 274	**26**	Folder name.....272
20	Image quality.....64	**27**	White balance 139
21	Image size 69		Color temperature.....147
22	Image area [2].....58		White balance fine-tuning 143
23	Image authentication indicator 342		Preset manual 148
		28	Color space.....181

2 FX is displayed if **FX format (36 × 24)** was selected for the **Image area** option in the shooting menu. If **DX format (24 × 16)** was selected, DX will be displayed in yellow.

Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback

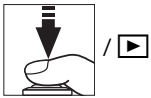
To display images in “contact sheets” of four or nine images, press the ⊖ button.



Full-frame playback

Thumbnail playback

The following operations can be performed while thumbnails are displayed:

To	Use	Description
Display more images		Press button to "zoom out" from one to four images per page. Press again to display nine images per page.
Display fewer images		Press button to "zoom in" from nine to four images per page. Press again to display highlighted image full frame.
Toggle full frame playback		Press center of multi selector to switch back and forth between full frame and thumbnail playback.
Highlight images		Use multi selector to highlight images for full-frame playback, playback zoom (pg. 234), or deletion (pg. 236).
Delete highlighted photo		See page 236 for more information.
Change protect status of highlighted photo		See page 235 for more information.
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 259 for more information.

See Also

For information on choosing the role played by the center of the multi selector, see Custom Setting f2 (**Multi selector center button**, pg. 318).

Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the 🔍 button to zoom in on the image displayed in full-frame playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail playback.

The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

To	Use	Description
Zoom in or out	🔍 / 🔍	Press 🔍 to zoom in to maximum of approximately 27 × (large images), 20 × (medium images) or 13 × (small images). Press 🔍 to zoom out. While photo is zoomed in, use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. Navigation window is displayed when zoom ratio is altered; area currently visible in monitor is indicated by yellow border.
View other areas of image		
View other images		Rotate main command dial to view same location in other images at current zoom ratio.
Change protect status	🔑	See page 235 for more information.
Return to shooting mode	/ ▶	Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 259 for more information.

Protecting Photographs from Deletion

In full-frame, zoom, and thumbnail playback, the O-key button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files can not be deleted using the 🗑 button or the **Delete** option in the playback menu. Note that protected images *will* be deleted when the memory card is formatted (pp. 43, 332).

To protect a photograph:

1 Select an image.

Display the image in full-frame playback or playback zoom or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the O-key button.

The photograph will be marked with a O-key icon. To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the O-key button.

Removing Protection from All Images

To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected in the **Playback folder** menu, press the O-key and 🗑 buttons together for about two seconds.

Deleting Individual Photographs

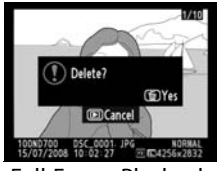
To delete the photograph displayed in full-frame playback or the photograph highlighted in the thumbnail list, press the 🗑 button. Once deleted, photographs can not be recovered.

1 Select an image.

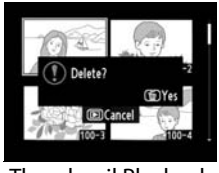
Display the image or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the 🗑 button.

A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



Full-Frame Playback



Thumbnail Playback

To delete the photograph, press the 🗑 button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the ▶ button.

See Also

To delete multiple images, use the **Delete** option in the playback menu (pg. 262). The **After delete** option in the playback menu determines whether the next image or the previous image is displayed after an image is deleted (pg. 265).

Connections

– Connecting to External Devices

This chapter describes how to copy photographs to a computer, how to print pictures, and how to view them on a television set.

Connecting to a Computer ..... pg. 238

Direct USB Connection ..... pg. 240

Wireless and Ethernet Networks ..... pg. 242

Printing Photographs ..... pg. 243

Direct USB Connection ..... pg. 244

Viewing Photographs on TV ..... pg. 255

Standard Definition Devices ..... pg. 255

High-Definition Devices ..... pg. 257

Connecting to a Computer

This section describes how to use the supplied UC-E4 USB cable to connect the camera to a computer. Before connecting the camera, install Nikon Transfer and ViewNX from the supplied Software Suite CD (see the *Install Guide* for more information). Nikon Transfer starts automatically when the camera is connected and is used to copy photographs to the computer, where they can be viewed using ViewNX (Nikon Transfer can also be used to back up photographs and embed information in photographs as they are transferred, while ViewNX can be used to sort photographs, convert images to different file formats, and perform simple editing on NEF (RAW) photographs). To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before use or use an EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter (available separately).

■■ *Supported Operating Systems*

The camera can be connected to computers running the following operating systems:

- **Windows**: Windows Vista Service Pack 1 (32-bit Home Basic/Home Premium/Business/Enterprise/Ultimate) and Windows XP Service Pack 2 (Home Edition/Professional)
- **Macintosh**: Mac OS X (version 10.3.9, 10.4.11, or 10.5.2)

See the websites listed on page xxiv for the latest information on supported operating systems.

Connecting Cables

Be sure the camera is off when connecting or disconnecting interface cables. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

Camera Control Pro 2

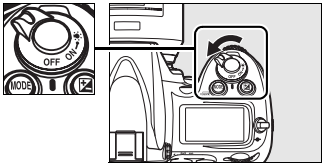
Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately; pg. 388) can be used to control the camera from a computer. When Camera Control Pro 2 is running, "PC" will be displayed in the control panel.

Direct USB Connection

Connect the camera using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable.

1 Turn the camera off.

Power switch

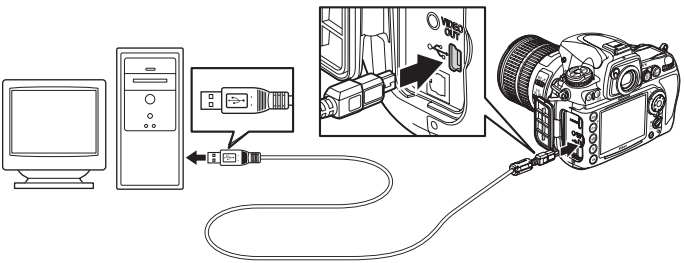


2 Turn the computer on.

Turn the computer on and wait for it to start up.

3 Connect the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

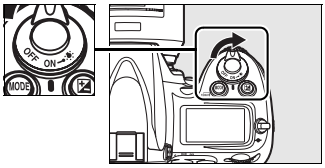


USB Hubs

Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

4 Turn the camera on.

Power switch



5 Transfer photographs.

Start Transfer button

Nikon Transfer will start automatically; click the **Start Transfer** button to transfer photographs (for more information on using Nikon Transfer, select **Nikon Transfer help** from the Nikon Transfer **Help** menu).

6 Turn the camera off.

Turn the camera off and disconnect the USB cable when transfer is complete.

During Transfer

Do not turn the camera off or disconnect the USB cable while transfer is in progress.

Wireless and Ethernet Networks

If the optional WT-4 wireless transmitter (pg. 385) is attached, photographs can be transferred or printed over wireless or Ethernet networks and the camera can also be controlled from network computers running Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately). The WT-4 can be used in any of the following modes:

Mode	Function
Transfer mode	Upload new or existing photographs to computer or ftp server.
Thumbnail select mode	Preview photographs on computer monitor before upload.
PC mode	Control camera from computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately).
Print mode	Print JPEG photographs on printer connected to network computer.

For more information, see the WT-4 user's manual. Be sure to update to the latest versions of the WT-4 firmware and supplied software.

Transfer Mode

When **Wireless transmitter** > **Mode** > **Transfer mode** is selected in the camera setup menu, the ⊛ button is used during playback to select pictures for upload, preventing it from being used to select pictures for other operations, such as side-by-side comparison (pg. 362). To restore normal operation, select another option for **Wireless transmitter** > **Mode**.

WT-4A/B/C/D/E

The principal difference between the WT-4 and WT-4A/B/C/D/E is in the number of channels supported; unless otherwise stated, all references to the WT-4 also apply to the WT-4A/B/C/D/E.

Printing Photographs

Photographs can be printed by any of the following methods:

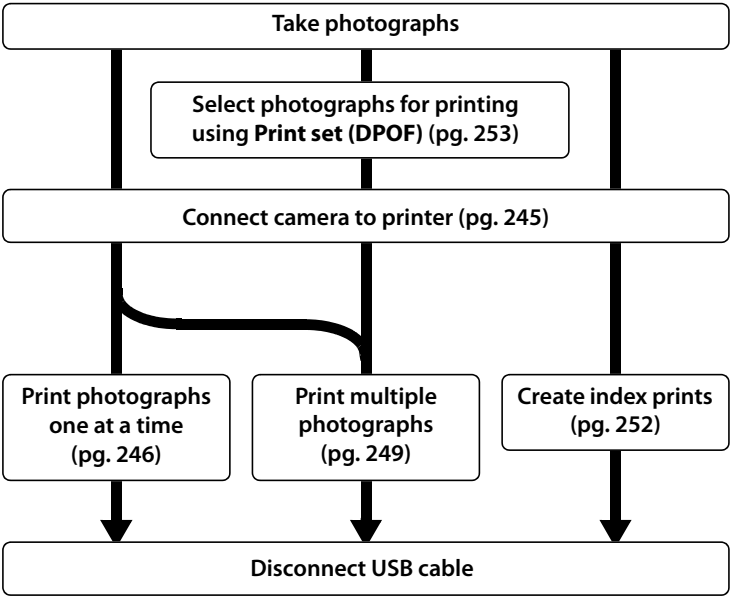
- Connect the camera to a printer and print JPEG photographs directly from the camera (pg. 244).
- Insert the camera memory card in a printer equipped with a card slot (see the printer manual for details). If the printer supports DPOF (pg. 435), photographs can be selected for printing using **Print set (DPOF)** (pg. 253).
- Take the camera memory card to a developer or digital printer center. If the center supports DPOF (pg. 435), photographs can be selected for printing using **Print set (DPOF)** (pg. 253).
- Print JPEG photographs on a printer connected to a network computer using the WT-4 wireless transmitter (available separately; see the WT-4 user's manual for details).
- Transfer pictures (pg. 238) and print them from a computer using ViewNX (supplied; pg. 238) or Capture NX 2 (available separately; pg. 388). Note that this is the only method available for printing RAW (NEF) pictures.

TIFF Photographs

TIFF photographs can be printed from a computer. Some digital print services may also support TIFF; check with the service before ordering.

Direct USB Connection

If the camera is connected to a PictBridge printer via the supplied USB cable, selected JPEG pictures can be printed directly from the camera.



USB Hubs

Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

Printing Via Direct USB Connection

Be sure the battery is fully charged or use an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter. When taking photographs to be printed via direct USB connection, set **Color space** to **sRGB** (pg. 181).

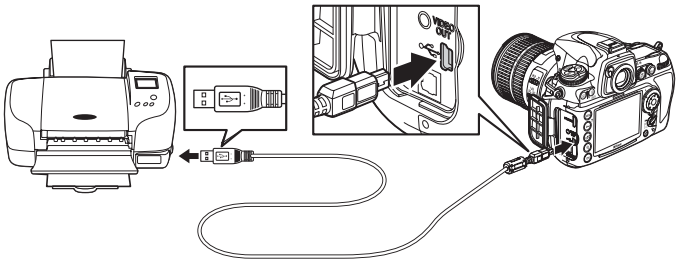
■■ *Connecting the Printer*

Connect the camera using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable.

1 Turn the camera off.

2 Connect the USB cable.

Turn the printer on and connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.



3 Turn the camera on.

A welcome screen will be displayed in the monitor, followed by a PictBridge playback display.

①

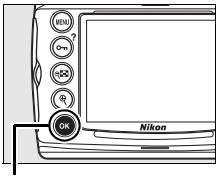
②

1 Select a picture.

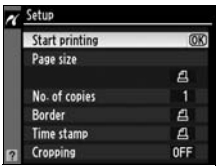
Press ◀ or ▶ to view additional pictures, or press the 🔍 button to zoom in on the current frame (pg. 234). To view six pictures at a time, press the 🔍 button. Use the multi selector to highlight pictures, or press 🔍 to display the highlighted picture full frame.

2 Display printing options.

Press ⓚ to display PictBridge printing options.

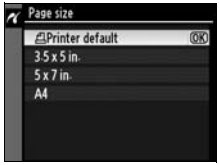
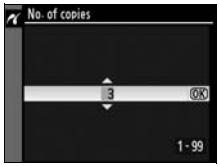
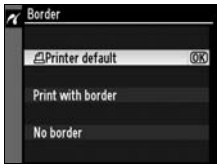
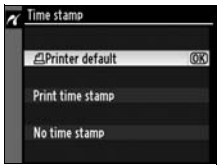


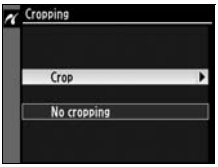
ⓚ **button**



3 Adjust printing options.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option and press ▶ to select.

Option	Description
Page size	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select **Printer default**), then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu. 
No. of copies	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose number of copies (maximum 99), then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu. 
Border	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose print style from **Printer default** (default for current printer), **Print with border** (print photo with white border), or **No border**, then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu. 
Time stamp	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose **Printer default** (default for current printer), **Print time stamp** (print time and date of recording on photo), or **No time stamp**, then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu. 

Option	Description
Cropping	Menu shown at right will be displayed. To exit without cropping picture, highlight **No cropping** and press ⊛. To crop picture, highlight **Crop** and press ▶.  If **Crop** is selected, dialog shown at right will be displayed. Press 🔍 to increase size of crop, 🔍 to decrease. Choose position of crop using multi selector and press ⊛.

4 Start printing.

Select **Start printing** and press ⊛ to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press ⊛.

Selecting Photographs for Printing

Images created at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) (pg. 64) can not be selected for printing.

See Also

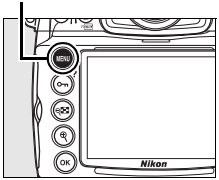
See page 415 for information on what to do if an error occurs during printing.

Printing Multiple Pictures

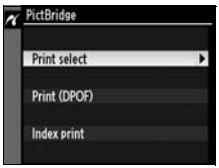
1 Display the PictBridge menu.

Press the MENU button in the PictBridge playback display (see Step 3 on page 245).

MENU button



2 Choose Print select or Print (DPOF).

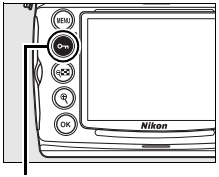


Highlight one of the following options and press ▶.

- **Print select**: Select pictures for printing.
- **Print (DPOF)**: Print an existing print order created with the **Print set (DPOF)** option in the playback menu (pg. 253). The current print order will be displayed in Step 3.

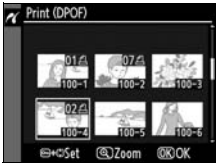
To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select **Index print**. See page 252 for more information.

3 Select pictures.



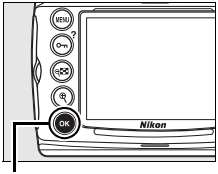
button

Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture full screen, press ⊕ button. To select the current picture for printing, press the button and press ▲. The picture will be marked with a icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the button pressed, press ▲ or ▼ to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press ▼ when the number of prints is 1). Continue until all the desired pictures have been selected.

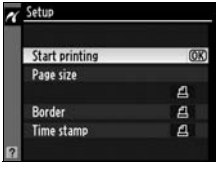


4 Display printing options.

Press ⊛ to display PictBridge printing options.



⊛ button



5 Adjust printing options.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option and press ▶ to select.

Option	Description
Page size	Menu of page size options will be displayed (pg. 247). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select **Printer default**), then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu.
Border	Menu of border options will be displayed (pg. 247). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose print style from **Printer default** (default for current printer), **Print with border** (print photo with white border), or **No border**, then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu.
Time stamp	Menu of time stamp options will be displayed (pg. 247). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose **Printer default** (default for current printer), **Print time stamp** (print time and date of recording on photo), or **No time stamp**, then press ⓚ to select and return to previous menu.

6 Start printing.

Select **Start printing** and press ⓚ to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press ⓚ.

Page Size, Border, Time Stamp, and Cropping

Choose printer default to print at current printer settings. Only options supported by the current printer can be selected. Note that print quality may drop if small crops are printed at large sizes.

See Also

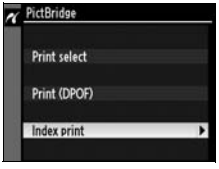
See page 415 for information on what to do if an error occurs during printing.

■■ *Creating Index Prints*

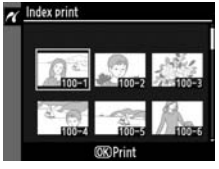
To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select **Index print** in Step 2 of "Printing Multiple Pictures" (pg. 249). Note that if the memory card contains more than 256 pictures, only the first 256 images will be printed.

1 Select **Index print.**

Highlight **Index print** in the PictBridge menu (pg. 249) and press ▶.



The confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed.

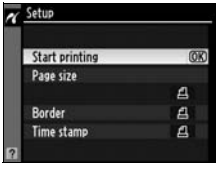


2 Display printing options.

Press ⊛ to display PictBridge printing options.

3 Adjust printing options.

Choose page size, border, and time stamp options as described on page 251 (a warning will be displayed if the selected page size is too small).



4 Start printing.

Highlight **Start printing** and press ⊛ to start printing. To cancel before printing is complete, press ⊛.

■■ *Creating a DPOF Print Order: Print Set*

The **Print set (DPOF)** option in the playback menu is used to create digital "print orders" for PictBridge-compatible printers and devices that support DPOF. Selecting **Print set (DPOF)** from the playback menu displays the menu shown in Step 1.

---

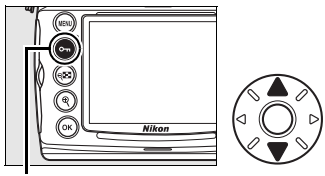
1 Choose Select/set.

Highlight **Select/set** and press ▶.

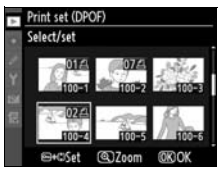
---

2 Select pictures.

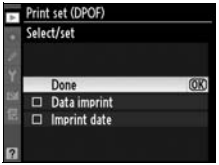
Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture in full screen, press 🔍 button. To select the current picture for printing, press the 🔑 button and press ▲. The picture will be marked with a 🖨 icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the 🔑 button pressed, press ▲ or ▼ to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press ▼ when the number of prints is 1). Press OK when all the desired pictures have been selected (to exit to the playback menu without changing the print order, press MENU).



🔑 **button**



3 Select imprint options.

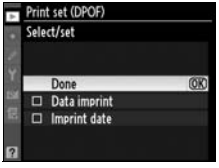


Highlight the following options and press ▶ to toggle the highlighted option on or off (to complete the print order without including this information, proceed to Step 4).

- **Data imprint**: Print shutter speed and aperture on all pictures in print order.
- **Imprint date**: Print date of recording on all pictures in print order.

4 Complete the print order.

Highlight **Done** and press ⊛ to complete the print order.



Print Set

To print the current print order when the camera is connected to a PictBridge printer, select **Print (DPOF)** in the PictBridge menu and follow the steps in "Printing Multiple Pictures" to modify and print the current order (pg. 249). DPOF date and data imprint options are not supported when printing via direct USB connection; to print the date of recording on photographs in the current print order, use the PictBridge **Time stamp** option.

The Print Set option can not be used if there is not enough space on the memory card to store the print order.

Images created at image quality settings of NEF (RAW; pg. 64) can not be selected for printing using this option.

Print orders may not print correctly if images are deleted using a computer or other device after the print order is created.

Viewing Photographs on TV

The supplied EG-D100 video cable can be used to connect the camera to a television or VCR for playback or recording. A type C mini-pin **H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface (HDMI) cable (available separately from commercial sources) can be used to connect the camera to high-definition video devices.

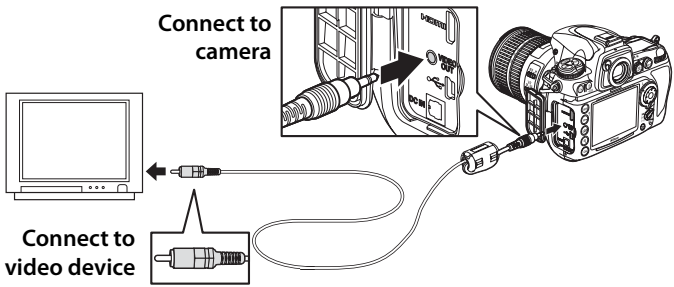
Standard Definition Devices

To connect the camera to a standard television:

1 **Turn the camera off.**

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting the video cable.

2 **Connect the supplied video cable as shown.**



3 **Tune the television to the video channel.**

4 **Turn the camera on and press ▶ button.**

During playback, images will be displayed both on the television screen or recorded to video tape and the camera monitor.

Video Mode (pg. 333)

Be sure that the video standard matches the standard used in the video device. Note that resolution will drop when images are output on a PAL device.

Television Playback

Use of an EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter (available separately) is recommended for extended playback. When the EH-5a or EH-5 is connected, the camera monitor-off delay will be fixed at ten minutes and the exposure meters will no longer turn off automatically. Note that the edges may not be visible when photographs are viewed on a television screen.

Slide Shows

The **Slide show** option in the playback menu can be used for automated playback (pg. 266).

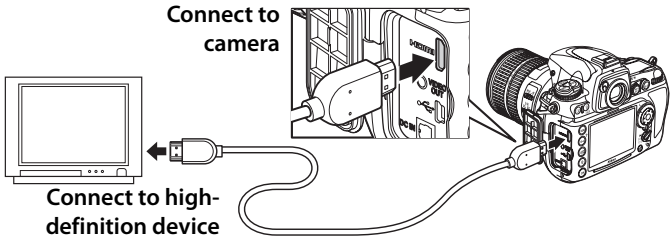
High-Definition Devices

The camera can be connected to HDMI devices using a type C mini-pin HDMI cable (available separately from commercial sources).

1 Turn the camera off.

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting an HDMI cable.

2 Connect the HDMI cable as shown.



3 Tune the device to the HDMI channel.

4 Turn the camera on and press ▶ button.

During playback, images will be displayed on the high-definition television or monitor screen; the camera monitor will remain off.

HDMI (pg. 333)

At the default setting of **Auto**, the camera automatically selects the appropriate HDMI format for the high-definition device. The HDMI format can be chosen using the **HDMI** option in the setup menu (pg. 333).

Menu Guide

This chapter describes the options available in the camera menus.

The Playback Menu: Managing Images ..... pg. 260

The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options..... pg. 268

Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings ..... pg. 280

The Setup Menu: Camera Setup..... pg. 331

The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies ..... pg. 349

My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu ..... pg. 364

The Playback Menu: Managing Images

The playback menu contains the options listed below. To display the playback menu, press MENU and press ◀ to highlight the tab for current menu, then press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the playback menu tab; for more information, see page 26.

Option	See page
Delete	262
Playback folder	263
Hide image	263
Display mode	264
Image review	265
After delete	265
Rotate tall	265
Slide show	266
Print set (DPOF)	253

Selecting Multiple Pictures

Follow the steps below to select multiple pictures for **Delete** (pg. 262), **Hide image** (pg. 263), or **Print set (DPOF)** (pg. 267). Multiple pictures can also be selected for direct printing (pg. 249).

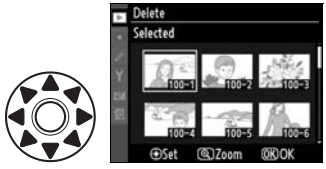
1 Display the menu.

Press the MENU button, select the playback menu tab, and select the desired item in the playback menu.

2 Display thumbnails.

To select pictures from a list of thumbnails, choose the "Selected", "Select/set", or "Print (DPOF)" option.

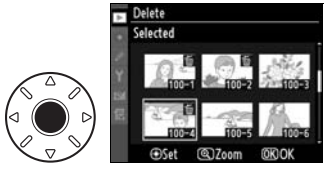
3 Highlight a picture.



To view the highlighted picture full screen, press and hold the 🔍 button.

4 Press the center of the multi selector to select the highlighted picture.

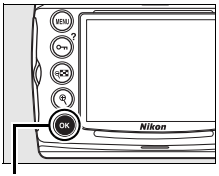
Selected pictures are marked by an icon. When selecting pictures for printing, press the ⊶ button and press ▲ or ▼ to choose the number of copies.



5 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures.

To deselect a picture, highlight it and press center of multi selector.

6 Press ⓚ to complete the operation.



ⓚ **button**

A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press ⓚ.

Delete

Select this option to delete pictures. Protected and hidden images will not be deleted.

Option	Description
Selected	Delete selected pictures.
All	Delete all pictures in the folder currently selected for playback (pg. 263).

Playback Folder

Choose a folder for playback.

Option	Description
ND700 (default)	Pictures in all folders created with the D700 will be visible during playback.
All	Pictures in all folders will be visible during playback.
Current	Only pictures in the current folder will be visible during playback.

Hide Image

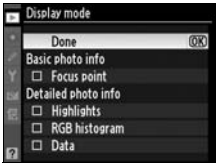
Hide or reveal selected pictures. Hidden pictures are visible only in the **Hide image** menu and can only be deleted by formatting the memory card.

Option	Description
Select/set	Hide or reveal selected pictures.
Deselect all?	Reveal all pictures.

Protected and Hidden Images

Revealing a protected image will also remove protection from the image.

Display Mode



Choose the information available in the playback photo information display (pg. 220). Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option, then press ▶ to select the option for the photo information display. A ✔ appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press ▶. To return to the playback menu, highlight **Done** and press ▶.

Option	Description
Basic photo info	
Focus point	Active focus point (or, in single-servo AF, focus point where focus first locked) is shown in red in photo information display. No focus point is displayed if camera was unable to focus using continuous-servo autofocus or if continuous-servo autofocus was used with auto-area AF.
Detailed photo info	
Highlights	Highlights for master RGB channel and for individual red, green, and blue channels are shown in photo information display. Very bright areas blink on and off.
RGB histogram	Red, green, and blue histograms are displayed in photo information display.
Data	Shooting data pages (including camera name, metering, exposure, focal length, white balance, and image options) appear in photo information display.

Image Review

Choose whether pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting.

Option	Description
On	Pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor after shooting.
Off (default)	Pictures can only be displayed by pressing ▶ button.

After Delete

Choose the picture displayed after an image is deleted.

Option	Description
Show next (default)	Display following picture. If deleted picture was last frame, previous picture will be displayed.
Show previous	Display previous picture. If deleted picture was first frame, following picture will be displayed.
Continue as before	If user was scrolling through pictures in order recorded, following picture will be displayed as described for **Show next**. If user was scrolling through pictures in reverse order, previous picture will be displayed as described for **Show previous**.

Rotate Tall

Choose whether to rotate "tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures for display during playback. Note that because the camera itself is already in the appropriate orientation during shooting, images are not rotated automatically during image review (pg. 219).

Option	Description
On	"Tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures are automatically rotated for display in the camera monitor. Pictures taken with **Off** selected for **Auto image rotation** (pg. 336) will be displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.
Off (default)	"Tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures are displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.

Slide Show

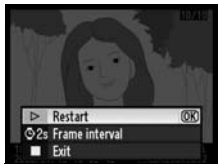
Create a slide show of the pictures in the current playback folder (pg. 263). Hidden images (pg. 263) are not displayed.

Option	Description
Start	Start slide show.
Frame interval	Choose how long each picture will be displayed.

To start the slide show, highlight **Start** and press ⊛. The following operations can be performed while the slide show is in progress:

To	Press	Description
Skip back/skip ahead		Press ◀ to return to previous frame, ▶ to skip to next frame.
View additional photo info		Change photo info displayed (pg. 220).
Pause slide show	⊛	Pause slide show (see below).
Exit to playback menu	MENU	End slide show and return to playback menu.
Exit to playback mode	▶	End slide show and exit to full-frame (pg. 218) or thumbnail playback (pg. 232).
Exit to shooting mode		Press shutter-release button halfway to return to shooting mode.

A dialog shown at right is displayed when the show ends or when the ⊛ button is pressed to pause playback. Select **Restart** to restart (if the slide was paused, the show will resume from the next slide) or **Exit** to return to the playback menu.



Print Set (DPOF)

Choose **Select/set** to select pictures for printing on a DPOF-compatible device (pg. 253). Choose **Deselect all?** to remove all pictures from the current print order.

The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options

The shooting menu contains the options listed below. To display the shooting menu, press MENU and press ◀ to highlight the tab for current menu, then press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the shooting menu tab; for more information, see page 26.

Option	See page
Shooting menu bank	269
Reset shooting menu	271
Active folder	272
File naming	274
Image quality	64
Image size	69
Image area	58
JPEG compression	67
NEF (RAW) recording	67
White balance	140
Set Picture Control	160
Manage Picture Control	168
Color space	181
Active D-Lighting	180
Vignette control	276
Long exp. NR	277
High ISO NR	278
ISO sensitivity settings	106
Live view	90
Multiple exposure	198
Interval timer shooting	203

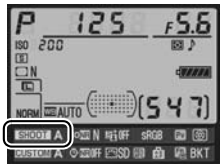
Shooting Menu Bank

Shooting menu options are stored in one of four banks. With the exceptions of **Multiple exposure**, **Interval timer shooting**, and modifications to Picture Controls (quick adjust and other manual adjustments), changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four shooting menu banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the **Rename** option as described below.

Shooting Menu Bank

The current shooting menu bank is shown in the shooting information display, which can be viewed by pressing the **info** button. The shooting menu bank can also be selected from the shooting information display (pg. 15).



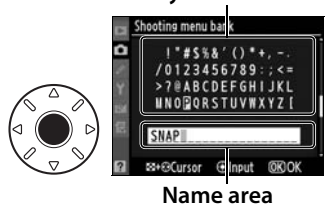
Renaming Shooting Menu Banks

Selecting **Rename** in the **Shooting menu bank** menu displays the list of shooting menu banks shown in Step 1.

1 Select a bank.

Highlight the desired bank and press ▶.

2 Enter a name.

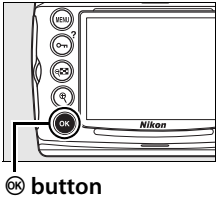


To move the cursor in the name area, press the ⊖ button and press ◀ or ▶. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the bank name, press the MENU button.

Bank names can be up to twenty characters long. Any characters after the twentieth will be deleted.

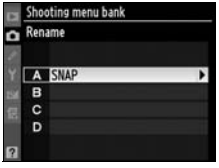
3 Save changes and exit.

After editing the name, press Ⓚ to save changes and exit.



Ⓚ button

The **Shooting menu bank** menu will be displayed.



Reset Shooting Menu

Choose whether to restore default settings for the current shooting menu bank. See page 419 for a list of default settings. With the exceptions of image quality, image size, white balance, and ISO sensitivity, shooting menu settings are not reset when a two-button reset (pg. 196) is performed.

Option	Description
Yes	Restore defaults for the current shooting menu bank.
No (default)	Exit without changing shooting menu settings.

Active Folder

Select the folder in which subsequent images will be stored.

■■ *New Folder Number*

1 **Select New folder number.**

Highlight **New folder number** and press ▶.

2 **Choose a folder number.**

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight a digit, press ▲ or ▼ to change. If a folder with the selected number already exists, a 🗀, 🗁, or 🗁 icon will be displayed to the left of the folder number:

- 🗀 : Folder is empty.
- 🗁 : Folder is partially full.
- 🗁 : Folder contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999. No further pictures can be stored in this folder; folder will not be selected when Ⓚ button is pressed.

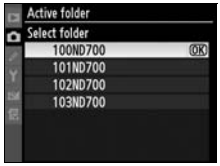
3 **Save changes and exit.**

Press Ⓚ to complete the operation and return to the shooting menu (to exit without changing the active folder, press the MENU button). If a folder with the specified number does not already exist, a new folder will be created. Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder unless it is already full.

■■ *Select Folder*

1 Choose **Select folder.**

Highlight **Select folder** and press ▶.



2 Highlight a folder.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a folder.

3 Select the highlighted folder.

Press ⊛ to select the highlighted folder and return to the shooting menu (to exit without changing the active folder, press the MENU button). Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder.

Folder and File Numbers

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999, the shutter-release will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. To continue shooting, create a folder with a number less than 999, or select an existing folder with a number less than 999 and less than 999 images.

Number of Folders

Additional time may be required for camera startup if the memory card contains a very large number of folders.

File Naming

Photographs are saved using file names consisting of "DSC_" or, in the case of images that use the Adobe RGB color space, "_DSC", followed by a four-digit number and a three-letter extension (e.g., "DSC_0001.JPG"). The **File naming** option is used to select three letters to replace the "DSC" portion of the file name. For information on editing file names, see steps 2 and 3 of "Renaming Shooting Menu Banks" (pg. 270). Note that the portion of the name that can be edited is a maximum of three characters long.

Extensions

The following extensions are used: ".NEF" for NEF (RAW) images, ".TIF" for TIFF (RGB) images, ".JPG" for JPEG images, and ".NDF" for dust off reference data.

Image Quality

Choose image quality (pg. 64).

Image Size

Choose the size at which pictures are recorded (pg. 69).

Image Area

Although the D700 can record photographs with the same diagonal picture angle as a 35mm format camera using a 3 : 2 aspect ratio, it can also be used to record photographs with the smaller DX picture angle (pg. 58).

JPEG Compression

Choose whether to compress JPEG images to a fixed size or to vary file size for improved image quality (pg. 67).

NEF (RAW) Recording

Choose compression and bit-depth options for NEF (RAW) images (pg. 67).

White Balance

Adjust white balance settings (pg. 140).

Set Picture Control

Select from the Picture Controls provided with the camera to instantly adjust image processing settings (pg. 160).

Manage Picture Control

Save and modify custom Picture Control combinations, or copy custom Picture Controls to or from the memory card (pg. 168).

Color Space

Choose from sRGB and Adobe RGB color spaces (pg. 181).

Active D-Lighting

This option can be used to prevent loss of detail in highlights and shadows (pg. 179). Choose from **Auto**, **High**, **Normal**, **Low**, and **Off** (the default setting).

Vignette Control

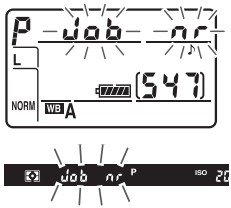
"Vignetting" is a drop in brightness at the edges of a photograph. Its effects vary from lens to lens and are most noticeable at maximum aperture. **Vignette control** reduces vignetting for type G and D lenses (DX and PC lenses excluded). Choose from **High**, **Normal** (the default setting), **Low**, and **Off**.

Vignette Control

Depending on the scene, shooting conditions, and type of lens, TIFF and JPEG images may exhibit unevenness or variations in peripheral brightness, while custom Picture Controls and Nikon Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings may not produce the desired effect. Take test shots and view the results in the monitor. Vignette control does not apply to multiple exposures (pg. 198), DX-format images (pg. 58), or images created with **Image overlay** (pg. 361). The effects of vignette control can not be previewed in live view (pg. 89).

Long Exp. NR (Long Exposure Noise Reduction)

Choose whether to reduce noise in pictures taken at slow shutter speeds.

Option	Description
On	Photographs taken at shutter speeds slower than 1 s are processed to reduce noise. While photographs are being processed, the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. "Job nr" will blink in the shutter speed/aperture displays for a period of time approximately equal to the current shutter speed. In continuous release mode, frame rates will slow and while photographs are being processed, the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Photographs can not be taken until processing is complete and "Job nr" has cleared from the displays. Noise reduction will not be performed if the camera is turned off before processing is complete. 
Off (default)	Long exposure noise reduction off.

The Shooting Information Display

Long exposure noise reduction can be adjusted from the shooting information display (pg. 15).

High ISO NR

Photographs taken at high ISO sensitivities can be processed to reduce "noise."

Option	Description
HIGH **High**	Noise reduction is performed at ISO sensitivities of ISO 2000 and higher. While photographs are being processed, the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Choose the amount of noise reduction performed from **High**, **Normal**, and **Low**.
NORM **Normal** (default)	
LOW **Low**	
Off	Noise reduction is only performed at sensitivities of Hi 0.3 and higher. The amount of noise reduction is less than the amount performed when **Low** is selected for **High ISO NR**.

The Shooting Information Display

High ISO noise reduction can be adjusted from the shooting information display (pg. 15).

ISO Sensitivity Settings

Adjust ISO sensitivity and ISO sensitivity auto control settings (pp. 106, 108).

Live View

Choose a live view mode and the release mode that will be used when the camera is in live view mode (pg. 90).

Multiple Exposure

Create a single photograph from two to ten exposures (pg. 198).

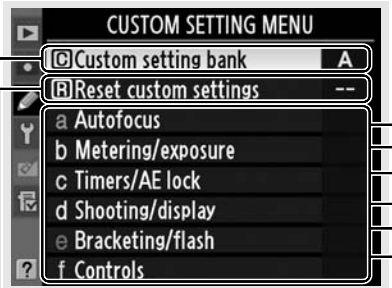
Interval Timer Shooting

Take photographs automatically at pre-selected intervals. Use for time-lapse movies of such subjects as flowers opening or butterflies emerging from cocoons (pg. 203).

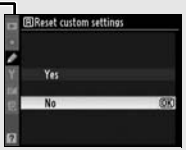
Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings

Custom Settings are used to customize camera settings to suit individual preferences. To display the Custom Settings, press MENU and press ◀ to highlight the tab for current menu, then press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the Custom Settings tab; for more information, see page 26.

Main menu

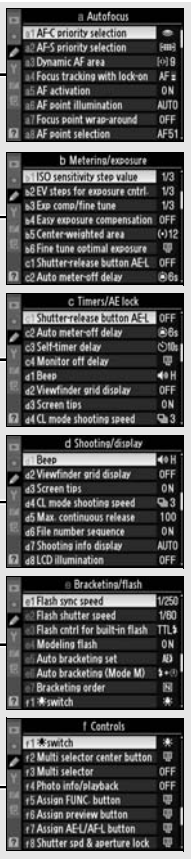


Ⓒ: Custom setting bank (pg. 282)



Ⓡ: Reset custom settings (pg. 282)

Custom Setting groups



The following Custom Settings are available:

	Custom Setting	Page
Ⓒ	**Custom setting bank**	282
Ⓡ	**Reset custom settings**	282
a	**Autofocus**	
a1	AF-C priority selection	283
a2	AF-S priority selection	284
a3	Dynamic AF area	285
a4	Focus tracking with lock-on	287
a5	AF activation	287
a6	AF point illumination	288
a7	Focus point wrap-around	288
a8	AF point selection	289
a9	Built-in AF-assist illuminator	290
a10	AF-ON for MB-D10	291
b	**Metering/exposure**	
b1	ISO sensitivity step value	292
b2	EV steps for exposure cntrl.	292
b3	Exp comp/fine tune	292
b4	Easy exposure compensation	293
b5	Center-weighted area	294
b6	Fine tune optimal exposure	294
c	**Timers/AE lock**	
c1	Shutter-release button AE-L	296
c2	Auto meter-off delay	296
c3	Self-timer delay	297
c4	Monitor off delay	297
d	**Shooting/display**	
d1	Beep	298
d2	Viewfinder grid display	298
d3	Screen tips	298
d4	CL mode shooting speed	299

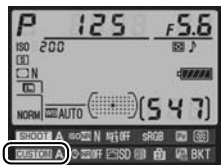
	Custom Setting	Page
d	**Shooting/display**	
d5	Max. continuous release	299
d6	File number sequence	300
d7	Shooting info display	301
d8	LCD illumination	302
d9	Exposure delay mode	302
d10	MB-D10 battery type	302
d11	Battery order	304
e	**Bracketing/flash**	
e1	Flash sync speed	305
e2	Flash shutter speed	308
e3	Flash cntrl for built-in flash	309
e4	Modeling flash	315
e5	Auto bracketing set	315
e6	Auto bracketing (Mode M)	316
e7	Bracketing order	317
f	**Controls**	
f1	☼ switch	318
f2	Multi selector center button	318
f3	Multi selector	319
f4	Photo info/playback	320
f5	Assign FUNC. button	320
f6	Assign preview button	324
f7	Assign AE-L/AF-L button	325
f8	Shutter spd & aperture lock	326
f9	Customize command dials	326
f10	Release button to use dial	328
f11	No memory card?	329
f12	Reverse indicators	330

C: Custom Setting Bank

Custom Settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four Custom Settings banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the **Rename** option as described on page 270.

Custom Settings Bank



The bank letter is shown in the shooting information display, which can be viewed by pressing the **info** button; the Custom Settings bank can also be selected from the shooting information display (pg. 15). If settings in the current bank have been modified from default values, an asterisk will be displayed adjacent to the altered settings in the second level of the Custom Settings menu.

Reset Custom Settings

Choose whether to restore default settings for the current Custom Settings bank. See page 420 for a list of default settings. Custom Settings are not reset when a two-button reset is performed.

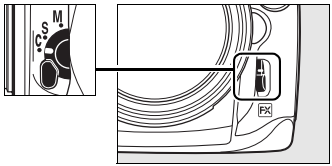
Option	Description
Yes	Restore defaults for the current Custom Settings bank.
No (default)	Exit without changing Custom Settings.

a: Autofocus

a1: AF-C Priority Selection

This option controls whether photographs can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) or only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) in continuous-servo AF. To select continuous-servo AF, rotate the focus mode selector to **C**.

Focus mode selector



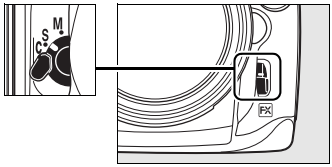
Option	Description
Release (default)	Photos can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed.
Release + focus	Photos can be taken even when the camera is not in focus. In continuous mode, frame rate slows for improved focus if the subject is dark or low contrast.
Focus	Photos can only be taken when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

Regardless of the option selected, focus will not lock when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

a2: AF-S Priority Selection

This option controls whether photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) or whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) in single-servo AF. To select single-servo AF, rotate the focus mode selector to **S**.

Focus mode selector



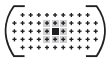
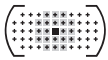
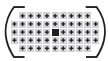
Option	Description
Release	Photos can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed.
Focus (default)	Photos can only be taken when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

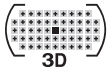
Regardless of the option selected, focus will lock while the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

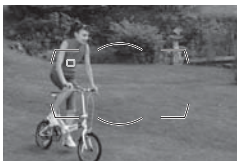
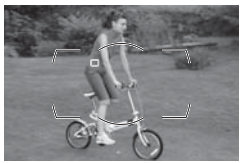
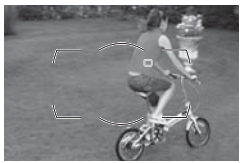
a3: Dynamic AF Area

If the subject leaves the selected focus point when dynamic-area AF ([⊡]; pg. 74) is selected in continuous-servo AF (focus mode **C**; pg. 72), the camera will focus based on information from surrounding focus points. Choose the number of focus points from 9, 21, and 51 based on subject movement.

Only active focus point is displayed in the viewfinder. Remaining focus points provide information to assist focus operation.

Option	Description
[⊡]9 **9 points** (default) 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding eight focus points. Choose when there is time to compose the photograph or when photographing subjects that are moving predictably (e.g., runners or race cars on a track).
[⊡]21 **21 points** 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding 20 focus points. Choose when photographing subjects that are moving unpredictably (e.g., players at a football game).
[⊡]51 **51 points** 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding 50 focus points. Choose when photographing subjects that are moving quickly and can not be easily framed in the viewfinder (e.g., birds).

Option	Description
[·]3D **51 points (3D-tracking)** 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will use 3D-tracking to track the subject and select a new focus point as required. Use to quickly compose pictures with subjects that are moving erratically from side to side (e.g., tennis players). If the subject leaves the viewfinder, remove your finger from the shutter-release button and recompose the photograph with the subject in the selected focus point.

3D-tracking

When the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, the colors in the area surrounding the focus point are stored in the camera. Consequently 3D-tracking may not produce the desired results with subjects that are the same color as the background or that occupy a very small area of the frame.

a4: Focus Tracking with Lock-On

This option controls how autofocus adjusts to sudden large changes in the distance to the subject.

Option	Description
Long	When the distance to the subject changes abruptly, the camera waits for the specified period (long, normal, or short) before adjusting the distance to the subject. This prevents the camera from refocusing when the subject is briefly obscured by objects passing through the frame.
Normal (default)	
Short	
Off	The camera immediately adjusts focus when the distance to the subject changes. Use when photographing a series of subjects at varying distances in quick succession.

a5: AF Activation

This option controls whether both the shutter-release button and the **AF-ON** button can be used to initiate autofocus, or whether autofocus is only initiated when the **AF-ON** button is pressed.

Option	Description
Shutter/ AF-ON (default)	Autofocus can be performed with the **AF-ON** button or by pressing the shutter-release button halfway.
AF-ON only	Autofocus can only be performed using the **AF-ON** button.

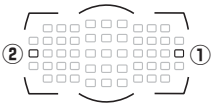
a6: AF Point Illumination

Choose whether the active focus point is highlighted in red in the viewfinder.

Option	Description
Auto (default)	The selected focus point is automatically highlighted as needed to establish contrast with the background. DX format crop is indicated by frame in viewfinder.
On	The selected focus point is always highlighted, regardless of the brightness of the background. DX format crop is indicated by frame in viewfinder. Depending on the brightness of the background, the selected focus point may be difficult to see.
Off	The selected focus point is not highlighted. Area outside DX format crop is indicated by transparent mask in viewfinder.

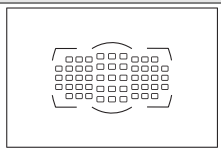
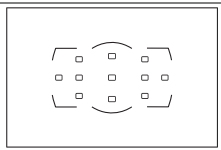
a7: Focus Point Wrap-Around

Choose whether focus-point selection "wraps around" from one edge of the viewfinder to another.

Option	Description
Wrap	 Focus-point selection "wraps around" from top to bottom, bottom to top, right to left, and left to right, so that, for example, pressing ▶ when a focus point at the right edge of the viewfinder display is highlighted (①) selects the corresponding focus point at the left edge of the display (②).
No wrap (default)	The focus-area display is bounded by the outermost focus points so that, for example, pressing ▶ when a focus point at the right edge of the display is selected has no effect.

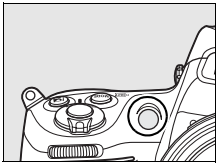
a8: AF Point Selection

Choose the number of focus points available for manual focus-point selection.

Option	Description	
AF51 **51 points** (default)	Choose from the 51 focus points shown at right.	
AF11 **11 points**	Choose from the 11 focus points shown at right. Use for quick focus-point selection.	

a9: Built-in AF-Assist Illuminator

Choose whether the built-in AF-assist illuminator lights to assist the focus operation when lighting is poor.



Option	Description
On (default)	The AF-assist illuminator lights when lighting is poor. AF-assist illumination is only available when both of the following conditions are met: 1. Single-servo autofocus is selected for focus mode (pg. 72). 2. Auto-area AF is chosen for AF-area mode (pg. 74), or single-point or dynamic-area AF is chosen and the center focus point is selected.
Off	The AF-assist illuminator does not light to assist the focus operation. The camera may not be able to focus using autofocus when lighting is poor.

The AF-Assist Illuminator

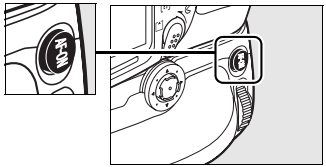
The AF-assist illuminator has a range of about 0.5–3.0 m (1 ft. 8 in.–9 ft. 10 in.); when using the illuminator, use a lens with a focal length of 24–200 mm and remove the lens hood.

See Also

See page 375 for restrictions on the lenses that can be used with AF assist.

a10: AF-On for MB-D10

Choose the function assigned to the **AF-ON** button on the optional MB-D10 battery pack.



Option	Description
AF-ON (default)	Pressing the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button initiates autofocus.
AE/AF lock	Focus and exposure lock while the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock (Reset on release)	Exposure locks when the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released or the exposure meters turn off.
AE lock (Hold)	Exposure locks when the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
AF lock only	Focus locks while the MB-D10 **AF-ON** button is pressed.
Same as FUNC. button	The MB-D10 **AF-ON** button performs the function selected for Custom Setting f5 (pg. 320).

The AF-ON Button

Pressing the **AF-ON** button will not activate vibration reduction when a VR lens is attached.

b: Metering/Exposure

b1: ISO Sensitivity Step Value

This option determines whether adjustments to sensitivity are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option	
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)
1/2	**1/2 step**
1	**1 step**

b2: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl.

This option determines whether adjustments to shutter speed, aperture, and bracketing are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option		Description
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV. The bracketing increment can be selected from 1/3, 2/3, and 1 EV.
1/2	**1/2 step**	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1/2 EV. The bracketing increment can be selected from 1/2 and 1 EV.
1	**1 step**	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1 EV. The bracketing increment is set to 1 EV.

b3: Exp Comp/Fine Tune

This option determines whether adjustments to exposure and flash compensation are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option	
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)
1/2	**1/2 step**
1	**1 step**

b4: Easy Exposure Compensation

This option controls whether the ± button is needed to set exposure compensation (pg. 128). If **On (Auto reset)** or **On** is selected, the 0 at the center of the exposure display will blink even when exposure compensation is set to ±0.

Option		Description
RESET	**On (Auto reset)**	Exposure compensation is set by rotating one of the command dials (see note below). The setting selected using the command dial is reset when the camera or exposure meters turn off (exposure compensation settings selected using the ± button are not reset).
	On	As above, except that the exposure compensation value selected using the command dial is not reset when the camera or exposure meters turn off.
	Off (default)	Exposure compensation is set by pressing the ± button and rotating the main command dial.

Change Main/Sub

The dial used to set exposure compensation when **On (Auto reset)** or **On** is selected for Custom Setting b4 (**Easy exposure compensation**) depends on the option selected for Custom Setting f9 (**Customize command dials**) > **Change main/sub** (pg. 326).

		Customize command dials > Change main/sub	
		Off (default)	**On**
Exposure mode	P	Sub-command dial	Sub-command dial
	S	Sub-command dial	Main command dial
	A	Main command dial	Sub-command dial
	M	N/A	

b5: Center-Weighted Area

When calculating exposure, center-weighted metering assigns the greatest weight to a circle in the center of the frame. The diameter (ϕ) of this circle can be set to 8, 12, 15, or 20 mm or to the average of the entire frame.

Option	
(•)8	ϕ **8 mm**
(•)12	ϕ **12 mm** (default)
(•)15	ϕ **15 mm**
(•)20	ϕ **20 mm**
(•)Avg	**Average**

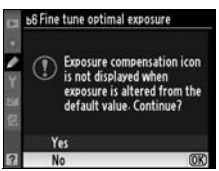
Note that unless **Average** is selected, the diameter is fixed at 12 mm when a non-CPU lens is used, regardless of the setting selected for **Non-CPU lens data** in the setup menu (pg. 210). When **Average** is selected, the average of the entire frame will be used for both CPU and non-CPU lenses.

b6: Fine Tune Optimal Exposure

Use this option to fine-tune the exposure value selected by the camera. Exposure can be fine tuned separately for each metering method by from +1 to –1 EV in steps of 1/6 EV.

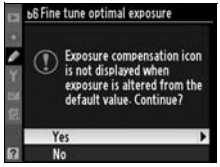
1 Select Custom Setting b6.

Highlight Custom Setting b6 (**Fine tune optimal exposure**) and press ▶.



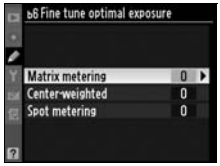
2 Select Yes.

The message shown at right will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press ▶ to proceed, or select **No** to exit without altering exposure.



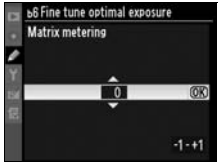
3 Select a metering method.

Highlight **Matrix metering**, **Center-weighted**, or **Spot metering** and press ▶.



4 Choose an exposure value.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose an exposure value from +1 to –1 EV. Press ⊛ to save changes and exit.



☑ Fine-Tuning Exposure

Exposure can be fine-tuned separately for each Custom Settings bank and is not affected by two-button resets. Note that as the exposure compensation (⊠) icon is not displayed, the only way to determine how much exposure has been altered is to view the amount in the fine-tuning menu. Exposure compensation (pg. 128) is preferred in most situations.

c: Timers/AE Lock

c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L

At the default setting of **Off**, exposure only locks when the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed. If **On** is selected, exposure will also lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

c2: Auto Meter-off Delay

This option controls how long the camera continues to meter exposure when no operations are performed. Choose from 4 s, 6 s, 8 s, 16 s, 30 s, 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 30 minutes, or until the camera is turned off (**No limit**). The shutter-speed and aperture displays in the control panel and viewfinder turn off automatically when the exposure meters turn off.

Option	
4s	**4 s**
6s	**6 s** (default)
8s	**8 s**
16s	**16 s**
30s	**30 s**
1m	**1 min.**
5m	**5 min.**
10m	**10 min.**
30m	**30 min.**
∞	**No limit**

Choose a shorter meter-off delay for longer battery life. When the camera is powered by an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter, the auto meter-off delay is equivalent to **No limit**.

c3: Self-Timer Delay

This option controls the length of the shutter release delay in self-timer mode. Choose from 2 s, 5 s, 10 s, and 20 s.

Option	
⏲2s	**2 s**
⏲5s	**5 s**
⏲10s	**10 s** (default)
⏲20s	**20 s**

c4: Monitor off Delay

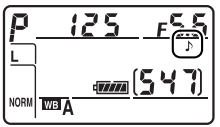
This option controls how long the monitor remains on when no operations are performed during playback, image review, or when menus or shooting information is displayed. Choose from 4 s (the default for image review), 10 s (the default for playback and shooting information), 20 s (the default for menus), 1 minute, 5 minutes, or 10 minutes. Choose a shorter monitor-off delay for longer battery life. Regardless of the setting chosen, the monitor remains on if no operations are performed for about ten minutes when the camera is powered by an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter.

Option	
4s	**4 s**
10s	**10 s** (default)
20s	**20 s**
1m	**1 min.**
5m	**5 min.**
10m	**10 min.**

d: Shooting/Display

d1: Beep

Choose **High** or **Low** to sound a beep when the self-timer is used or the camera focuses in single-servo autofocus (note that a beep will not sound if **Release** is selected for Custom Setting a2 (**AF-S priority selection**, pg. 284).

Option	Description
High (default)	Choose the pitch of the beep from **High** and **Low**. A ♪ icon is displayed in the control panel and shooting information displays. 
Low	
Off	Turn the beep speaker off.

d2: Viewfinder Grid Display

Choose whether on-demand grid lines are displayed in the viewfinder for reference when composing photographs.

Option	Description
On	On-demand grid lines displayed except when **DX format (24 × 16)** is selected for **Image area**.
Off (default)	On-demand grid lines not displayed.

d3: Screen Tips

Choose whether to show on-screen tips for items selected in the shooting display.

Option	Description
On (default)	Tips displayed.
Off	Tips not displayed.

d4: CL Mode Shooting Speed

This option determines the maximum frame advance rate in CL (continuous low speed) mode (during interval timer photography, this setting also determines the frame advance rate for single-frame mode). Choose from values between one and seven frames per second (fps); the default setting is 3 fps. Note that the frame advance rate may drop below the selected value at slow shutter speeds, and that the maximum frame rate without the optional MB-D10 battery pack is 5 fps.

d5: Max. Continuous Release

The maximum number of shots that can be taken in a single burst in continuous mode can be set to any value between 1 and 100.

The Memory Buffer

Regardless of the option selected for Custom Setting d5, shooting will slow when the memory buffer fills. See page 423 for more information on the capacity of the memory buffer.

d6: File Number Sequence

When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera.

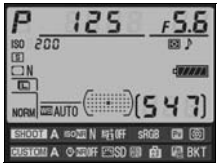
Option	Description
On (default)	When a new folder is created, the memory card formatted, or a new memory card inserted in the camera, file numbering continues from the last number used or from the largest file number in the current folder, whichever is higher. If a photograph is taken when the current folder contains a photograph numbered 9999, a new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.
Off	File numbering is reset to 0001 when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that a new folder is created automatically if a photograph is taken when the current folder contains 999 photographs.
RESET **Reset**	Same as for **On**, except that the next photograph taken is assigned a file number by adding one to the largest file number in the current folder. If the folder is empty, file numbering is reset to 0001.

☑ File Number Sequence

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains either 999 photographs or a photograph numbered 9999, the shutter-release button will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. Choose **Reset** for Custom Setting d6 (**File number sequence**) and then either format the current memory card or insert a new memory card.

d7: Shooting Info Display

At the default setting of **Auto** (**AUTO**), the color of the lettering in the information display (pg. 12) will automatically change from black to white or white to black to maintain contrast with the background. To always use the same color lettering, select **Manual** and choose **Dark on light** (**B**; black lettering) or **Light on dark** (**W**; white lettering). Monitor brightness will automatically be adjusted for maximum contrast with the selected text color.



Dark on light

Light on dark

d8: LCD Illumination

At the default setting of **Off**, the control panel backlight (LCD illuminator) will only light while the power switch is in the ☀ position. If **On** is selected, the control panel will be illuminated while the exposure meters are active (pg. 48). Select **Off** for increased battery life.

d9: Exposure Delay Mode

At the default setting of **Off**, shutter is released when the shutter-release button is pressed. When shooting with **Tripod** selected in live view mode (pg. 96) or in situations where the slightest camera movement can blur pictures, **On** can be selected to delay shutter release until about 1 s after the shutter-release button is pressed and the mirror is raised.

d10: MB-D10 Battery Type

To ensure that the camera functions as expected when eight AA batteries are used in the optional MB-D10 battery pack, match the option selected in this menu to the type of batteries inserted in the battery pack. There is no need to adjust this option when using EN-EL3e or optional EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 batteries.

Option	Description
LR6 **LR6 (AA alkaline)**	Select when using LR6 alkaline AA batteries.
Ni-MH **HR6 (AA Ni-MH)**	Select when using HR6 Ni-MH AA batteries.
FR6 **FR6 (AA lithium)**	Select when using FR6 lithium AA batteries.
ZR6 **ZR6 (AA Ni-Mn)**	Select when using ZR6 Ni-Mn AA batteries.

Using AA Batteries

EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion batteries (available separately) or EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion batteries are recommended for best performance. Fewer pictures can be taken with AA batteries (pg. 436). The capacity of AA batteries drops sharply at temperatures below 20 °C (68 °F) and varies with make and storage conditions; in some cases, batteries may cease to function before their expiry date. Some AA batteries can not be used; due to their performance characteristics and limited capacity, alkaline and nickel-manganese batteries should only be used if no alternative is available and then only at warmer temperatures. The camera shows the level of AA batteries as follows:

Control panel	Viewfinder	Description
	—	Batteries fully charged.
		Low battery. Ready fresh batteries.
(blinks)	(blinks)	Shutter release disabled. Change batteries.

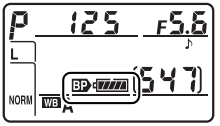
Battery level for EN-EL3e, EN-EL4a, or EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion batteries is displayed normally.

d11: Battery Order

Choose whether the battery in the camera or the batteries in the battery pack are used first when an optional MB-D10 battery pack is attached.

Option		Description
MB-D10	**Use MB-D10 batteries first** (default)	The camera battery is used only when the batteries in the MB-D10 are exhausted.
D700	**Use camera battery first**	The batteries in the MB-D10 are used only when the camera battery is exhausted.

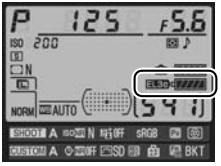
A BP icon is displayed in the camera control panel when the batteries in the MB-D10 are in use.



The MB-D10 Battery Pack

The MB-D10 takes one EN-EL3e, EN-EL4a, or EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion battery or eight AA alkaline, Ni-MH, lithium, or nickel manganese batteries (an EN-EL3e is supplied with the camera; EN-EL4a, EN-EL4, and AA batteries are available separately). Higher frame rates are available with EN-EL4a, EN-EL4, and AA batteries (pg. 87); note, however, that in the case of AA batteries the frame rate will decrease as battery level drops.

The shooting information display shows the type of battery inserted in the MB-D10 as follows:



MB-D10 battery type display	Battery type
EL3e	EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion battery
EL4	EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion battery
LR6/AA	AA batteries

e: Bracketing/Flash

e1: Flash Sync Speed

This option controls flash sync speed.

Option	Description
1/320 s (Auto FP)	Use auto FP high-speed sync with SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-R200 flash units. If other flash units are used, shutter speed is set to 1/320 s. When the camera shows a shutter speed of 1/320 s in exposure mode P or A, auto FP high-speed sync will be activated if the actual shutter speed is faster than 1/320 s.
1/250 s (Auto FP)	Use auto FP high-speed sync with SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-R200 flash units. If other flash units are used, shutter speed is set to 1/250 s. When the camera shows a shutter speed of 1/250 s in exposure mode P or A, auto FP high-speed sync will be activated if the actual shutter speed is faster than 1/250 s.
1/250 s (default)	Flash sync speed set to 1/250 s.
1/200 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/200 s.
1/160 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/160 s.
1/125 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/125 s.
1/100 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/100 s.
1/80 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/80 s.
1/60 s	Flash sync speed set to 1/60 s.

Fixing Shutter Speed at the Flash Sync Speed Limit

To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure modes, select the next shutter speed after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or bulb). An X (flash sync indicator) will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder.

Auto FP High-Speed Sync

Allows the flash to be used at the highest shutter speed supported by the camera, making it possible to choose the maximum aperture for reduced depth of field. "FP" is displayed in the shooting information display when auto-FP high-speed sync is active.

Flash Control at 1/320 s (Auto FP)

When **1/320 s (Auto FP)** is selected for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**, pg. 305), the built-in flash and optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-R200 flash units can be used at shutter speeds as fast as 1/320 s; at faster speeds, Auto FP High-Speed Sync is available with optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-R200 flash units.

Flash sync speed / Shutter speed	1/320 s (Auto FP)		1/250 s (Auto FP)		1/250 s	
	Built-in flash	Optional flash unit	Built-in flash	Optional flash unit	Built-in flash	Optional flash unit
1/8,000–1/320 s	—	Auto FP	—	Auto FP	—	—
1/320–1/250 s	Flash sync *		—	Auto FP	—	—
1/250–30 s	Flash sync					

* Flash range drops as shutter speed increases.

The Flash-Ready Indicator

When the flash fires at full power, the flash-indicator in the camera viewfinder will blink to warn that the resulting photograph may be underexposed. Note that the flash-ready indicators on optional flash units will not display this warning when **1/320 s (Auto FP)** is selected.

e2: Flash Shutter Speed

This option determines the slowest shutter speed available when using front- or rear-curtain sync or red-eye reduction in programmed auto or aperture-priority auto exposure modes (regardless of the setting chosen, shutter speeds can be as slow as 30 s in shutter-priority auto and manual exposure modes or at flash settings of slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, or red-eye reduction with slow sync). Options range from $^{1}/_{60}$ s (**1/60 s**, the default setting) to 30 s (**30 s**).

e3: Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash

Choose the flash mode for the built-in flash.

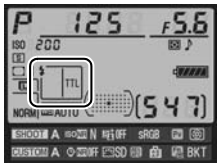
Option		Description
TTL	**TTL** (default)	Flash output is adjusted automatically in response to shooting conditions.
M	**Manual**	Choose the flash level (pg. 310).
RPT	**Repeating flash**	The flash fires repeatedly while the shutter is open, producing a strobe-light effect (pg. 310).
C	**Commander mode**	Use the built-in flash as a master flash controlling one or more remote optional flash units (pg. 311).

"Manual" and "Repeating Flash"

M RPT icons blink in the control panel and viewfinder when these options are selected.

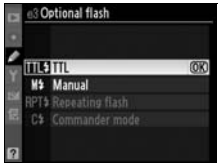
The Shooting Information Display

The flash control mode for the built-in flash can be viewed in the shooting information display (pg. 189).



The SB-400

When an optional SB-400 flash unit is attached and turned on, Custom Setting e3 changes to **Optional flash**, allowing the flash control mode for the SB-400 to be selected from **TTL** and **Manual** (**Repeating flash** and **Commander mode** options are not available).



■■ *Manual*

Choose a flash level between **Full** and **1/128** ($^1/_{128}$ of full power). At full power, the built-in flash has a Guide Number of 18/59 (m/ft., ISO 200, 20°C/68°F).

■■ *Repeating Flash*

The flash fires repeatedly while the shutter is open, producing a strobe-light effect. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the following options, ▲ or ▼ to change.

Option	Description
Output	Choose flash output (expressed as a fraction of full power).
Times	Choose the number of times the flash fires at the selected output. Note that depending on shutter speed and the option selected for **Frequency**, the actual number of flashes may be less than selected.
Frequency	Choose how often the flash fires per second.

"Times"

The options available for **Times** are determined by flash output.

Output	Options available for Times
1/4	2
1/8	2–5
1/16	2–10
1/32	2–10, 15
1/64	2–10, 15, 20, 25
1/128	2–10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35

■■ *Commander Mode*

Use the built-in flash as a master flash controlling one or more remote optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash units in up to two groups (A and B) using advanced wireless lighting.

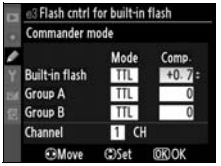
Selecting this option displays the menu shown at right. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the following options, ▲ or ▼ to change.

Option		Description
Built-in flash		Choose a flash mode for the built-in flash (commander flash).
	TTL	i-TTL mode. Choose flash compensation from values between +3.0 and –3.0 EV in increments of 1/3 EV.
	M	Choose the flash level from values between **Full** and **1/128** (1/128 of full power).
	– –	The built-in flash does not fire, but the AF-assist illuminator lights. The built-in flash must be raised so that it can emit monitor pre-flashes.
Group A		Choose a flash mode for all flash units in group A.
	TTL	i-TTL mode. Choose flash compensation from values between +3.0 and –3.0 EV in increments of 1/3 EV.
	AA	Auto aperture (available only with SB-900 and SB-800 flash units). Choose flash compensation from values between +3.0 and –3.0 EV in increments of 1/3 EV.
	M	Choose the flash level from values between **Full** and **1/128** (1/128 of full power).
	– –	The flash units in this group do not fire.
Group B		Choose a flash mode for all flash units in group B. The options available are the same as those listed for **Group A**, above.
Channel		Choose from channels 1–4. All flash units in both groups must be set to the same channel.

Follow the steps below to take photographs in commander mode.

1 Adjust settings for the built-in flash.

Choose the flash control mode and output level for the built-in flash. Note that output level can not be adjusted in – – mode.



2 Adjust settings for group A.

Choose the flash control mode and output level for the flash units in group A.

3 Adjust settings for group B.

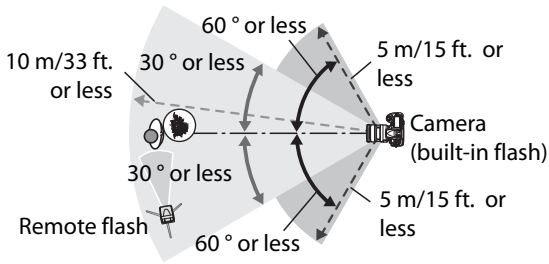
Choose the flash control mode and output level for the flash units in group B.

4 Select the channel.

5 Press OK.

6 Compose the shot.

Compose the shot and arrange the flash units as shown below. Note that the maximum distance at which the remote flash units can be placed may vary with shooting conditions.



Wireless remote sensors on flash units should face camera.

7 Set the remote flash units to the selected channel.

Turn all the remote flash units on and set them to the channel selected in Step 4. See the Speedlight instruction manuals for details.

8 Raise the built-in flash.

Press the flash pop-up button to raise the built-in flash. Note that even if **– –** is selected for **Built-in flash** > **Mode**, the built-in flash must be raised so that monitor preflashes will be emitted.

9 Frame the photograph, focus, and shoot.

After confirming that the camera flash-ready light and the flash-ready lights for all other flash units are lit, frame the photograph, focus, and shoot. FV lock (pg. 192) can be used if desired.

The Flash Sync Mode Display

ϟ does not appear in the control panel flash sync mode display when **– –** is selected for **Built-in flash** > **Mode**.

Flash Compensation

The flash compensation value selected with the ⚡ (ϟ) button and sub-command dial is added to the flash compensation values selected for the built-in flash, group A, and group B in the **Commander mode** menu. A ⚡ icon is displayed in the control panel and viewfinder when a flash compensation value other than ±0 is selected for **Built-in flash** > **TTL**. The ⚡ icon flashes when the built-in flash is in mode **M**.

Commander Mode

Position the sensor windows on the remote flash units to pick up the monitor preflashes from the built-in flash (particular care is required when not using a tripod). Be sure that direct light or strong reflections from the remote flash units do not enter the camera lens (in TTL mode) or the photocells on the remote flash units (AA mode), as this may interfere with exposure. To prevent timing flashes emitted by the built-in flash from appearing in photographs taken at short range, choose low ISO sensitivities or small apertures (large f-numbers) or use an optional SG-3IR infrared panel for the built-in flash. An SG-3IR is required for best results with rear-curtain sync, which produces brighter timing flashes. After positioning the remote flash units, take a test shot and view the results in the camera monitor.

Although there is no limit on the number of remote flash units that may be used, the practical maximum is three. With more than this number, the light emitted by the remote flash units will interfere with performance.

e4: Modeling Flash

If **On** (the default setting) is selected when the camera is being used with the built-in flash or an optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash unit, a modeling flash will be emitted when the camera depth-of-field preview button is pressed (pg. 115). No modeling flash is emitted if **Off** is selected.

e5: Auto Bracketing Set

Choose the setting or settings bracketed when auto bracketing (pg. 130) is in effect. Choose **AE & flash** (AE⚡; the default setting) to perform both exposure and flash-level bracketing, **AE only** (AE) to bracket only exposure, **Flash only** (⚡) to perform only flash-level bracketing, or **WB bracketing** (WB) to perform white-balance bracketing (pg. 135). Note that white balance bracketing is not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW) + JPEG.

e6: Auto Bracketing (Mode M)

This option determines which settings are affected when **AE & flash** or **AE only** is selected for Custom Setting e5 in manual exposure mode.

Option	Description
Flash/speed (default)	Camera varies shutter speed (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or shutter speed and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash/speed/ aperture	Camera varies shutter speed and aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or shutter speed, aperture, and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash/ aperture	Camera varies aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or aperture and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash only	Camera varies flash level only (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).

Flash bracketing is performed only with i-TTL or AA flash control. If a setting other than **Flash only** is selected and the flash is not used, ISO sensitivity will be fixed at the value for the first shot, regardless of the setting selected for ISO sensitivity auto control (pg. 108).

e7: Bracketing Order

At the default setting of **MTR**>**under**>**over** (N), bracketing is performed in the order described on pages 132 and 136. If **Under**>**MTR**>**over** (**−→+**) is selected, shooting will proceed in order from the lowest to the highest value.

f: Controls

f1: Switch

Choose the function performed by rotating the power switch to the position.

Option	Description
LCD backlight (default)	Control panel backlight illuminates for 6 s.
Both	Control panel backlight illuminates and shooting information is displayed in monitor.

f2: Multi Selector Center Button

This option determines what operations can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector in shooting and playback modes.

Shooting Mode

Selecting **Shooting mode** displays the following options:

Option	Description
Select center focus point (default)	Pressing the center of the multi selector in shooting mode selects the center focus point.
Highlight active focus point	Pressing the center of the multi selector in shooting mode highlights the active focus point.
Not used	Pressing the center of the multi selector has no effect when the camera is in shooting mode.

■■ *Playback Mode*

Selecting **Playback mode** displays the following options:

Option	Description
Thumbnail on/off (default)	Press the center of the multi selector to toggle between full-frame and thumbnail playback.
View histograms	In both full-frame and thumbnail playback, a histogram is displayed while the center of the multi selector is pressed.
Zoom on/off	Press the center of the multi selector to toggle between full-frame or thumbnail playback and playback zoom. Choose the initial zoom setting from **Low magnification**, **Medium magnification**, and **High magnification**. The zoom display will center on the active focus point.
Choose folder	Pressing center of multi selector displays list of folders. Highlight folder and press ⊛ to select folder for playback. Folders displayed depend on option selected for **Playback folder** (pg. 263).

f3: Multi Selector

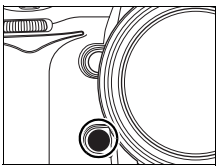
If **Reset meter-off delay** is selected, operating the multi selector when the exposure meters are off (pg. 48) will activate the exposure meters. If **Do nothing** (the default option) is selected, the exposure meters will not be activated when the multi selector is pressed.

f4: Photo Info/Playback

At the default setting of **Info▲▼/Playback◀▶**, pressing ▲ or ▼ in full-frame playback changes the photo information displayed, while pressing ◀ or ▶ displays additional images. To reverse the role of the multi selector buttons so that pressing ▲ or ▼ displays additional images and pressing ◀ or ▶ changes the photo information displayed, select **Info◀▶/Playback▲▼**. This setting also applies to the multi selector on the optional MB-D10 battery pack.

f5: Assign FUNC. Button

Choose the role played by the **Fn** button, either by itself (**FUNC. button press**) or when used in combination with the command dials (**FUNC. button+dials**).



The Shooting Information Display

The role of the **Fn** button can also be selected in the shooting information display (pg. 15).

■■ *FUNC. Button Press*

Selecting **FUNC. button press** for Custom Setting f5 displays the following options:

Option	Description
Preview *	Press the **Fn** button to preview depth of field (pg. 115).
FV lock *	Press the **Fn** button to lock flash value (built-in flash and SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200 flash units only, pg. 192). Press again to cancel FV lock.
AE/AF lock	Focus and exposure lock while the **Fn** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while the **Fn** button is pressed.

Option		Description
	AE lock (Reset on release) *	Exposure locks when the **Fn** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or the exposure meters turn off.
	AE lock (Hold) *	Exposure locks when the **Fn** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
	AF lock only	Focus locks while the **Fn** button is pressed.
	Flash off	The flash will not fire in photos taken while the **Fn** button is pressed.
BKT	**Bracketing burst**	If the **Fn** button is pressed while exposure or flash bracketing is active in single frame release mode, all shots in the current bracketing program will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. If white balance bracketing is active or continuous release mode (mode **CH** or **CL**) is selected, the camera will repeat the bracketing burst while the shutter-release button is held down (in single frame release mode, white balance bracketing will be repeated at the frame rate for **CH** release mode).
	Matrix metering	Matrix metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.
	Center-weighted	Center-weighted metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.
	Spot metering	Spot metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.
	Access top item in My Menu *	Press the **Fn** button to jump to the top item in "MY MENU." Select this option for quick access to a frequently-used menu item.
	Live view *	Press the **Fn** button to toggle live view on and off. Not available when the mode dial is set to or **MUP**.

Option		Description
+RAW	**+NEF (RAW)** *	If image quality is set to **JPEG fine**, **JPEG normal**, or **JPEG basic**, "RAW" will be displayed in the control panel and an NEF (RAW) copy will be recorded with the next picture taken after the **Fn** button is pressed. To exit without recording an NEF (RAW) copy, press the **Fn** button again.
	Virtual horizon *	The electronic analog exposure displays act as a tilt meter (pg. 322).
	None (default)	No operation is performed when the **Fn** button is pressed.

* This option can not be used in combination with **FUNC. button+dials** (pg. 323). Selecting this options displays a message and sets **FUNC. button+dials** to **None**. If another option is selected for **FUNC. button+dials** while this setting is active, **FUNC. button press** will be set to **None**.

Virtual Horizon

When **Virtual horizon** is selected for **FUNC. button press**, the electronic analog exposure displays in the viewfinder and control panel act as a horizontal level when the **Fn** button is pressed.

	Camera tilted right	Camera level	Camera tilted left
Control panel			
Viewfinder			

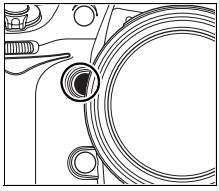
Note that the display may not be accurate when the camera is tilted at a sharp angle forward or back. If the camera is unable to measure the tilt angle, the display will flash.

■■ *FUNC. Button+Dials*

Selecting **FUNC. button+dials** for Custom Setting f5 displays the following options:

Option		Description
	Choose image area	Press the **Fn** button and rotate a command dial to choose the image area (pg. 58). Not available while a multiple exposure is being recorded.
	Shutter spd & aperture lock	Lock shutter speed (modes S and M) or aperture (modes A and M). Press the **Fn** button and rotate the main command dial to lock or unlock shutter speed; press the **Fn** button and rotate the sub-command dial to toggle lock or unlock aperture.
	1 step spd/ aperture	If the **Fn** button is pressed when the command dials are rotated, changes to shutter speed (exposure modes S and M) and aperture (exposure modes A and M) are made in increments of 1 EV.
Non-CPU	**Choose non-CPU lens number**	Press the **Fn** button and rotate a command dial to choose a lens number specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option.
BKT	**Auto bracketing** (default)	Press the **Fn** button and rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing program. Press the **Fn** button and rotate the sub-command dial to select bracketing increment.
	Dynamic AF area	If continuous-servo AF (focus mode **C**; pg. 72) is selected when dynamic-area AF ( ) is chosen for AF-area mode (pg. 74), the number of focus points can be selected by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating either of the command dials (pg. 285).
	None	No operation is performed when the command dials are rotated while the **Fn** button is pressed.

f6: Assign Preview Button

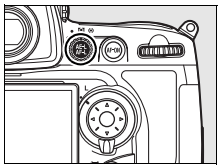


Choose the role played by the depth-of-field preview button, either by itself (**Preview button press**) or when used in combination with the command dials (**Preview + command dials**). The options available are the same as for **FUNC. button press** (pg. 320) and **FUNC. button+dials** (pg. 323), except that the default option for **Preview button press** is **Preview** and the default setting for **Preview + command dials** is **None**.

The Shooting Information Display

The role of the depth-of-field preview button can also be selected in the shooting information display (pg. 15).

f7: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button



Choose the role played by the **AE-L/AF-L** button, either by itself (**AE-L/AF-L button press**) or when used in combination with the command dials (**AE-L/AF-L+command dials**). The options available for **AE-L/AF-L button press** are the same as for **FUNC. button press** (pg. 320), except that **AE-L/AF-L button press** defaults to **AE/AF lock** and has an additional **AF-ON** option (if this option is selected, pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button has the same effect as pressing the **AF-ON** button to initiate autofocus). The options available for **AE-L/AF-L+command dials** are the same as for **FUNC. button+dials** (pg. 323), except that **AE-L/AF-L +command dials** defaults to **None** and lacks **1 step spd/aperture** option.

The Shooting Information Display

The role of the **AE-L/AF-L** button can also be selected in the shooting information display (pg. 15).

f8: Shutter Speed and Aperture Lock

Use this option to lock shutter speed at the value selected in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, or to lock aperture at the value selected in aperture-priority auto or manual exposure mode. Lock is not available in programmed auto exposure mode.

Option	Description
Shutter speed lock	Choose **On** to lock shutter speed, **Off** (the default option) to unlock.
Aperture lock	Choose **On** to lock aperture, **Off** (the default option) to unlock.

f9: Customize Command Dials

This option controls the operation of the main and sub-command dials.

Option	Description
Reverse rotation	Controls the direction of the command dials. Choose **No** (the default option) for normal command dial operation, or **Yes** to reverse the rotation of the command dials. This setting also applies to the command dials for the MB-D10.
Change main/sub	At the default setting of **Off**, the main command dial controls shutter speed and the sub-command dial controls aperture. If **On** is selected, the main command dial will control aperture and the sub-command dial shutter speed. This setting also applies to the command dials for the MB-D10.

Option	Description
Aperture setting	At the default setting of **Sub-command dial**, aperture can only be adjusted with the sub-command dial (or with the main command dial if **On** is selected for **Change main/sub**). If **Aperture ring** is selected, aperture can only be adjusted with the lens aperture ring and the camera aperture display will show aperture in increments of 1 EV (aperture for type G lenses is still set using the sub-command dial). Live view is not available when **Aperture ring** is selected and a CPU lens with an aperture ring is attached. Note that regardless of the setting chosen, the aperture ring must be used to adjust aperture when a non-CPU lens is attached.
Menus and playback	At the default setting of **Off**, the multi selector is used to choose the picture displayed during full-frame playback, highlight thumbnails, and navigate menus. If **On** is selected, the main command dial can be used to choose the picture displayed during full-frame playback, move the cursor left or right during thumbnail playback, and move the menu highlight bar up or down. The sub-command dial is used to display additional photo information in full-frame playback and to move the cursor up or down during thumbnail playback. While menus are displayed, rotating the sub-command dial right displays the sub-menu for the selected option, while rotating it left displays the previous menu. To make a selection, press ▶, the center of the multi selector, or ⊛.

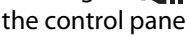
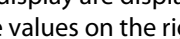
f10: Release Button to Use Dial

This option allows adjustments that are normally made by holding a button and rotating a command dial to be made by rotating the command dial after the button is released. At the default setting of **No**, the button must be pressed while the command dial is rotated. If **Yes** is selected, the setting can be changed by rotating the command dial after the button is released. Setting ends when the button is pressed again, the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, or any of the **MODE**, ⊠, ϟ, **ISO**, **QUAL**, or **WB** button is pressed (if **Auto bracketing** is selected for the corresponding "+dials" option as described on page 323, setting will also end when the **Fn**, depth-of-field preview, or **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed). Except when **No limit** is selected for Custom Setting c2 **Auto meter-off delay** or an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter is used, setting will also end when the exposure meters turn off.

f11: No Memory Card?

At the default setting of **Enable release**, the shutter can be released when no memory card is inserted, although no pictures will be recorded (they will however be displayed in the monitor in demo mode). If **Release locked** is selected, the shutter-release button is only enabled when a memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that when photographs are being captured to a computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately), photographs are not recorded to the camera memory card and the shutter will be enabled regardless of the setting chosen for this option.

f12: Reverse Indicators

At the default setting of  (+0−), the exposure indicators in the control panel, viewfinder and shooting information display are displayed with positive values on the left and negative values on the right. Select  (−0+) to display negative values on the left and positive values on the right.

The Setup Menu: Camera Setup

The setup menu contains the options listed below. To display the setup menu, press MENU and press ◀ to highlight the tab for current menu, then press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the setup menu tab; for more information, see page 26.

Option	See page
Format memory card	332
LCD brightness	332
Clean image sensor	392
Lock mirror up for cleaning [1]	395
Video mode	333
HDMI	333
World time	334
Language	334
Image comment	335
Auto image rotation	336
Dust off ref photo	337
Battery info	340
Wireless transmitter	242
Image authentication	342
Copyright information	343
Save/load settings	344
GPS	215
Virtual horizon	346
Non-CPU lens data	210
AF fine tune	347
Firmware version	348

1 Not available when battery is low.

Format Memory Card

Format the card. *Note that formatting permanently deletes all pictures and other data on the card*. Before formatting, be sure to make backup copies as required.

During Formatting

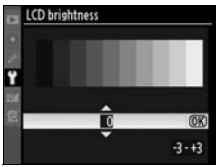
Do not turn the camera off or remove memory cards during formatting.

Two-Button Format

Memory cards can also be formatted using the FORMAT (🗑 and MODE) buttons (pg. 43).

LCD Brightness

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose from seven settings for monitor brightness. Choose higher values for increased brightness, lower values for reduced brightness.



Clean Image Sensor

Select this option to remove dust from the image sensor or to choose options for automatic image sensor cleaning (pg. 392).

Lock Mirror up for Cleaning

Lock the mirror in the up position to allow inspection or manual cleaning of the low-pass filter that protects the camera image sensor (pg. 395).

Video Mode

When connecting the camera to a television or VCR via the video connector, be sure the camera video mode matches the device video standard (NTSC or PAL).

HDMI

The camera is equipped with an HDMI (**H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface) mini-pin connector, allowing pictures to be played back on high-definition televisions or monitors using a type C cable (available separately from commercial suppliers). Before connecting the camera to high-definition device, choose the HDMI format from the options below.

Option	Description
AUTO **Auto** (default)	The camera automatically selects the appropriate format.
480p **480p (progressive)**	640 × 480 (progressive) format
576p **576p (progressive)**	720 × 576 (progressive) format
720p **720p (progressive)**	1,280 × 720 (progressive) format
1080i **1080i (interlaced)**	1,920 × 1,080 (interlaced) format

The camera monitor turns off automatically when an HDMI device is connected.

World Time

Change time zones, set the camera clock, choose the date display order, and turn daylight saving time on or off.

Option	Description
Time zone	Choose a time zone. The camera clock is automatically set to the time in the new time zone.
Date and time	Set the camera clock (pg. 38).
Date format	Choose the order in which the day, month, and year are displayed.
Daylight saving time	Turn daylight saving time on or off. The camera clock will automatically be advanced or set back one hour. The default setting is **Off**.

If the clock is not set, a blinking CLOCK icon will appear in the control panel.

Language

Choose a language for camera menus and messages. The following options are available.

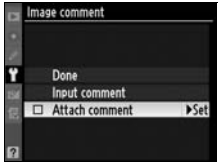
De	Deutsch	German
En	English	English
Es	Español	Spanish
Fi	Suomi	Finnish
Fr	Français	French
It	Italiano	Italian
Nl	Nederlands	Dutch
Pl	Polski	Polish

Pt	Português	Portuguese
Ru	Русский	Russian
Sv	Svenska	Swedish
繁	中文(繁體)	Traditional Chinese
简	中文(简体)	Simplified Chinese
日	日本語	Japanese
한	한글	Korean

Image Comment

Add a comment to new photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed in ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX 2 (available separately) (pg. 388). The comment is also visible on the third page of the photo information display.

- **Done**: Save changes and return to the setup menu.
- **Input comment**: Input a comment as described on page 270. Comments can be up to 36 characters long.
- **Attach comment**: Select this option to attach the comment to all subsequent photographs. **Attach comment** can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing ▶.



Auto Image Rotation

Photographs taken while **On** (the default option) is selected contain information on camera orientation, allowing them to be rotated automatically during playback (pg. 265) or when viewed in ViewNX or Capture NX 2 (available separately; pg. 388). The following orientations are recorded:

Landscape (wide) orientation

Camera rotated 90° clockwise

Camera rotated 90° counter-clockwise

Camera orientation is not recorded when **Off** is selected. Choose this option when taking photographs with the lens pointing up or down.

Rotate Tall

To automatically rotate "tall" (portrait-orientation) photographs for display during playback, select **On** for the **Rotate tall** option in the playback menu (pg. 265). Note that because the camera itself is already in the appropriate orientation during shooting, images are not rotated automatically during image review (pg. 219).

Dust off Ref Photo

Acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off option in Capture NX 2 (available separately; for more information, see the Capture NX 2 manual).

Dust off ref photo is available only when a CPU lens is mounted on the camera. A lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm is recommended. When using a zoom lens, zoom all the way in.

1 Choose a start option.

Highlight one of the following options and press ⊛. To exit without acquiring image dust off data, press MENU.

- **Start**: The message shown at right will be displayed and "rEF" will appear in the viewfinder and control panel displays.
- **Clean sensor and then start**: Select this option to clean the image sensor before starting. The message shown at right will be displayed and "rEF" will appear in the viewfinder and control panel displays when cleaning is complete.

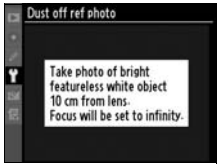


Image Sensor Cleaning

Dust off reference data recorded before image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken after image sensor cleaning is performed. Select **Clean sensor and then start** only if the dust off reference data will not be used with existing photographs.

2 Frame a featureless white object in the viewfinder.

With the lens about ten centimeters (four inches) from a well-lit, featureless white object, frame the object so that it fills the viewfinder and then press the shutter-release button halfway.

In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually.

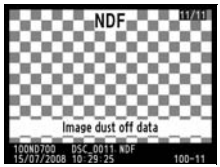
3 Acquire dust off reference data.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data. The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and the message shown at right will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from step 1.

Image Dust Off Reference Data

The same reference data can be used for photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures. Reference images can not be viewed using computer imaging software. A grid pattern is displayed when reference images are viewed on the camera; histograms and highlights are not displayed.



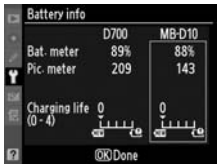
Battery Info

View information on the battery currently inserted in the camera.

Item	Description
Bat. meter	The current battery level expressed as a percentage.
Pic. meter	The number of times the shutter has been released with the current battery since the battery was last charged. Note that the camera may sometimes release the shutter without recording a photograph, for example when measuring preset white balance.
Calibration	This item is displayed only when the camera is powered by an optional MB-D10 battery pack equipped with an EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 battery (available separately). • CAL: Due to repeated use and recharging, calibration is required to ensure that battery level can be measured accurately; recalibrate battery before charging. • —: Calibration not required.
Charging life	A five-level display showing battery age. 0 (NEW) indicates that battery performance is unimpaired, 4 () that the battery has reached the end of its charging life and should be replaced. Note that batteries charged at temperatures under about 5 °C (41 °F) may show a temporary drop in charging life; the charging life display will however return to normal once the battery has been recharged at a temperature of about 20 °C (68 °F) or higher.

The MB-D10 Battery Pack

The information displayed when the camera is powered by an optional MB-D10 battery pack depends on the type of batteries used:



	Bat. meter	Pic. meter	Calibration	Charging life
EN-EL3e	✔	✔	—	✔
EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 (option)	✔	✔	✔	✔
8 × AA (option)	✔	—	—	—

Wireless Transmitter

This option is used to adjust settings for connection to a wireless network, using an optional WT-4 wireless transmitter. See "Connections: Wireless and Ethernet Networks" (pg. 242).

Image Authentication

Choose whether to embed image authentication information in new photographs as they are taken, allowing alterations to be detected using Nikon's optional Image Authentication software. Image authentication information can not be embedded in existing photographs. Photographs taken with image authentication on are marked with a icon on the file information and overview pages of the photo information display (pp. 221, 231).

Option	Description
On	Image authentication information embedded in new photographs as they are taken.
Off (default)	Image authentication information not embedded in new photographs.

Camera Control Pro 2

Image authentication information is not embedded in TIFF (RGB) photographs recorded directly to a computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately).

Copies

Image authentication information is not embedded in copies created using the options in the retouch menu (pg. 349).

Copyright Information

Add a copyright information to new photographs as they are taken. Copyright information is visible on the fourth page of the photo information display (pg. 228) and can be viewed using ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX 2 (available separately; pg. 388).

- **Done**: Save changes and return to the setup menu.
- **Artist**: Enter a photographer name as described on page 270. Photographer names can be up to 36 characters long.
- **Copyright**: Enter the name of the copyright holder as described on page 270. Copyright holder names can be up to 54 characters long.
- **Attach copyright information**: Select this option to attach copyright information to all subsequent photographs. **Attach copyright information** can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing ⊛.

Copyright Information

To prevent unauthorized use of the artist or copyright holder names, make sure that **Attach copyright information** is not selected and that the **Artist** and **Copyright** fields are blank before lending or transferring the camera to another person. Nikon does not accept liability for any damages or disputes arising from the use of the **Copyright Information** option.

Save/Load Settings

Select **Save settings** to save the following settings to the memory card (if the card is full, an error will be displayed; see pg. 412).

Menu	Option
Playback	Display mode
	Image review
	After delete
	Rotate tall
Shooting (all banks)	Shooting menu bank
	File naming
	Image quality
	Image size
	Image area
	JPEG compression
	NEF (RAW) recording
	White balance (with fine tuning and presets d-0–d-4)
	Set Picture Control
	Color space
	Active D-Lighting
	Vignette control
	Long exp. NR
	High ISO NR
	ISO sensitivity settings
	Live view
Custom settings (all banks)	All Custom Settings except **Reset custom settings**

Menu	Option
Setup	Clean image sensor
	Video mode
	HDMI
	World time (excepting date and time)
	Language
	Image comment
	Auto image rotation
	Image authentication
	Copyright information
	GPS
	Non-CPU lens data
My Menu/ Recent Settings	All My Menu items
	All recent settings
	Choose tab

Settings saved using the D700 can be restored by selecting **Load settings**. Note that **Save/load settings** is only available when a memory card is inserted in the camera, and that the **Load settings** option is only available if the card contains saved settings.

Saved Settings

Settings are saved in a file named NCSETUP4. The camera will not be able to load settings if the file name is changed. Settings saved using the D700 can not be used in other cameras.

GPS

Adjust settings for connection to a GPS unit (pg. 213).

Virtual Horizon

Display a virtual horizon based on information from the camera orientation sensor. The virtual horizon is displayed in green when the camera is level.

Tilting the Camera

The virtual horizon display is not accurate when the camera is tilted at a sharp angle forward or back. If the camera is unable to measure the tilt angle, the virtual horizon display will turn off.

See Also

For information on using the electronic analog exposure displays as a tilt meter, see Custom Setting f5 (**Assign FUNC. button** > **FUNC. button press**; pg. 320).

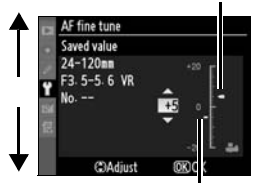
Non-CPU Lens Data

By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture) for up to nine non-CPU lenses, the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions (pg. 210).

AF Fine Tune

Fine-tune focus for up to 12 lens types. AF tuning is not recommended in most situations and may interfere with normal focus; use only when required.

Option	Description
AF fine tune (On/ Off)	• **On**: Turn AF tuning on. • **Off** (default): Turn AF tuning off.
Saved value	Tune AF for the current lens (CPU lenses only). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose a value between +20 and –20. Values for up to 12 lens types can be stored. Only one value can be stored for each type of lens.
Default	Choose the AF tuning value used when no previously saved value exists for the current lens (CPU lenses only).
List saved values	List previously saved AF tuning values. If a value exists for the current lens, it will be shown with a ▮ icon. To delete a lens from the list, highlight the desired lens and press 🗑. To change a lens identifier (for example, to choose an identifier that is the same as the last two digits of the lens serial number to distinguish it from other lenses of the same type in light of the fact that **Saved value** can be used with only one lens of each type), highlight the desired lens and press ▶. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press ▲ or ▼ to choose an identifier and press Ⓚ to save changes and exit.



AF Tuning

The camera may be unable to focus at minimum range or at infinity when AF tuning is applied.

Live View (Tripod) Mode

Tuning is not applied to contrast-detect autofocus when **Tripod** is selected in live view mode (pg. 96).

Saved Value

Only one value can be stored for each type of lens. If a teleconverter is used, separate values can be stored for each combination of lens and teleconverter.

Firmware Version

View the current camera firmware version.

The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies

The options in the retouch menu are used to create trimmed, or retouched copies of the photographs on the memory card. The retouch menu is only displayed when a memory card containing photographs is inserted in the camera. To display the retouch menu, press MENU and press ◀ to highlight the tab for current menu, then press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the retouch menu tab; for more information, see page 26.

Option	See page
D-lighting *	354
Red-eye correction *	355
Trim	356
Monochrome *	357
Filter effects *	358
Color balance *	358
Image overlay	359
Side-by-side comparison	362

* Not available with photographs taken with **Monochrome** selected for **Set Picture Control** (pg. 162).

Creating Retouched Copies

Except in the case of **Image overlay** (pg. 359) and **Side-by-side comparison** (pg. 362), the photographs to be retouched can be selected in full-frame playback as well as from the retouch menu.

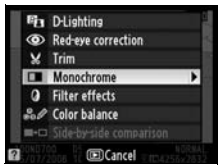
■ *Creating Retouched Copies in Full-Frame Playback*

1 Choose a picture.

Display the desired picture in full-frame playback (pg. 218).

2 Display the retouch menu.

Press ⊛ to display the retouch menu.



3 Select retouch options.

Highlight the desired item in the retouch menu and press ▶ to display retouch options (for more information, see the section for the selected item on the following pages). To return to full-frame playback without creating a retouched copy, press ▶.

See Also

See page 242 for information on using the ⊛ button with the WT-4 wireless transmitter.

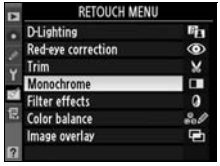
4 Create a retouched copy.

Press ⊛ to create a retouched copy. Retouched copies are indicated by a ✎ icon.

■ *Creating Retouched Copies from the Retouch Menu*

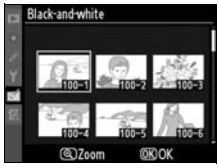
1 Select an item in the retouch menu.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an item, ▶ to select. Depending on the option selected, a menu may be displayed; highlight an option and press ▶.



2 Select a picture.

The pictures on the memory card will be displayed. Use the multi selector to highlight a picture (to view the highlighted picture full screen, press and hold the 🔍 button).



3 Display retouch options.

Press ⓚ to display retouch options (see the section for the selected option for details). To exit without creating a retouched copy, press MENU.

4 Create a retouched copy.

Press ⓚ to create a retouched copy. Retouched copies are indicated by a ✎ icon.

Retouching Copies

Copies created with **Trim** can not be further modified. D-lighting, red-eye correction, filter effects, and color balance can not be applied to monochrome copies. **Image overlay** can be applied multiple times. Otherwise the options in the retouch menu can each be applied once to existing copies, although multiple edits may result in loss of detail.

Image Quality

Except in the case of copies created with **Trim** (pg. 356) and **Image overlay**, copies created from JPEG images are the same size and quality as the original, copies created from NEF (RAW) photos are saved as large fine-quality JPEG images, and copies created from TIFF (RGB) photos are saved as fine-quality JPEG images of the same size as the original. Size-priority compression is used when copies are saved in JPEG format.

D-Lighting

D-lighting brightens shadows, making it ideal for dark or backlit photographs.

Before

After

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the amount of correction performed. The effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press ⊛ to copy the photograph.

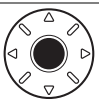
Red-Eye Correction

This option is used to correct "red-eye" caused by the flash, and is available only with photographs taken using the flash. The photograph selected for red-eye correction is previewed as shown at right. Confirm the effects of red-eye correction and create a copy as described in the following table. Note that red-eye correction may not always produce the expected results and may in very rare circumstances be applied to portions of the image that are not affected by red-eye; check the preview thoroughly before proceeding.

To	Use	Description
Zoom in		Press button to zoom in, button to zoom out. While photo is zoomed in, use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. Navigation window is displayed when zoom buttons or multi selector is pressed; area currently visible in monitor is indicated by yellow border. Press to cancel zoom.
Zoom out		
View other areas of image		
Cancel zoom	OK	
Create copy	OK	If the camera detects red-eye in the selected photograph, a copy will be created that has been processed to reduce its effects. No copy will be created if the camera is unable to detect red-eye.

Trim

Create a cropped copy of the selected photograph. The selected photograph is displayed with the selected crop shown in yellow; create a cropped copy as described in the following table.

To	Use	Description
Reduce size of crop		Press the button to reduce the size of the crop.
Increase size of crop		Press the button to increase the size of the crop.
Change crop aspect ratio		Rotate the main command dial to switch between aspect ratios of 3 : 2, 4 : 3, and 5 : 4.
Move crop		Use multi selector to move the crop to another area of the image.
Preview crop		Press center of multi selector to preview cropped image.
Create copy	OK	Save the current crop as a separate file.

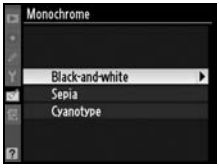
Trim: Image Quality and Size

Copies created from NEF (RAW), NEF (RAW) + JPEG, or TIFF (RGB) photos have an image quality (pg. 64) of JPEG fine; cropped copies created from JPEG photos have the same image quality as the original. The size of the copy varies with crop size and aspect ratio.

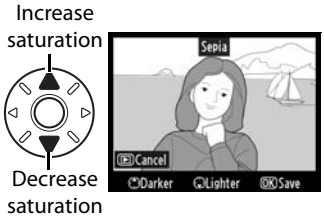
Aspect ratio	Possible sizes
3 : 2	3,424 × 2,280, 2,560 × 1,704, 1,920 × 1,280, 1,280 × 856, 960 × 640, 640 × 424
4 : 3	3,424 × 2,568, 2,560 × 1,920, 1,920 × 1,440, 1,280 × 960, 960 × 720, 640 × 480
5 : 4	3,216 × 2,568, 2,400 × 1,920, 1,808 × 1,440, 1,200 × 960, 896 × 720, 608 × 480

Monochrome

Copy photographs in **Black-and-white**, **Sepia**, or **Cyanotype** (blue and white monochrome).



Selecting **Sepia** or **Cyanotype** displays a preview of the selected image; press ▲ to increase color saturation, ▼ to decrease. Press ⊛ to create a monochrome copy.



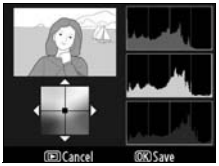
Filter Effects

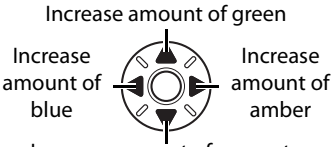
Choose from the following color filter effects. After adjusting filter effects as described below, press ⊛ to copy the photograph.

Option	Description
Skylight	Creates the effect of a skylight filter, making the picture less blue. The effect can be previewed in the monitor as shown at right.
Warm filter	Creates a copy with warm tone filter effects, giving the copy a "warm" red cast. The effect can be previewed in the monitor.

Color Balance

Use the multi selector to create a copy with modified color balance as shown below. The effect is displayed in the monitor together with red, green, and blue histograms (pg. 223) giving the distribution of tones in the copy. Press ⊛ to copy the photograph.





Creating JPEG Copies of NEF (RAW) Pictures

To create a JPEG copy of an NEF (RAW) picture, select the NEF (RAW) picture for **Color balance** and press ⊛ without modifying color balance. The JPEG copy will have an image quality of "fine" and a size of **L**.

Image Overlay

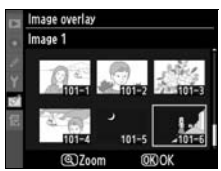
Image overlay combines two existing NEF (RAW) photographs to create a single picture that is saved separately from the originals; the results, which make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor, are noticeably better than overlays created in imaging applications. The new picture is saved at current image quality and size settings; before creating an overlay, set image quality and size (pp. 64, 69; all options are available). To create a NEF (RAW) copy, choose an image quality of **NEF (RAW)**.

1 Select **Image overlay.**

Highlight **Image overlay** in the retouch menu and press ▶. The dialog shown at right will be displayed, with **Image 1** highlighted.

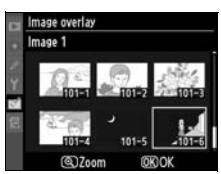
2 Display NEF (RAW) images.

Press ⊛. A picture selection dialog will be displayed.



3 Highlight a photograph.

Press ▲▼◀ or ▶ to highlight the first photograph in the overlay. To view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the ⊕ button. Hidden images are not displayed and can not be selected.



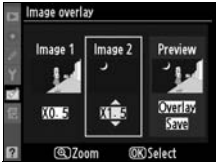
4 Select the highlighted photograph.

Press ⊛ to select the highlighted photograph and return to the preview display. The selected image will appear as **Image 1**.

5 Set gain.

Optimize exposure for the overlay by pressing ▲ or ▼ to select the gain for image 1 from values between 0.1 and 2.0. The default value is 1.0; selecting 0.5 cuts gain in half, while selecting 2.0 doubles gain. The effects of gain are visible in the **Preview** column.

6 Select the second photograph.



Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight **Image 2**. Repeat Steps 2–5 to select the second photo and adjust gain.

7 Highlight the Preview column.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the **Preview** column.

8 Preview the overlay.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight **Overlay** and press ⊛ (to save the overlay without displaying a preview, highlight **Save** and press ⊛). To return to Step 7 and select new photos or adjust gain, press ⊖.

9 Save the overlay.

Press ⊛ while the preview is displayed to save the overlay. After an overlay is created, the resulting image will be displayed full-frame in the monitor.

☑ Image Overlay

Only NEF (RAW) photographs created with the D700 can be selected for image overlay. Other images are not displayed in the selection screen. Only NEF (RAW) photographs with the same bit-depth can be combined.

The overlay has the same photo info (including date of recording, metering, shutter speed, aperture, exposure mode, exposure compensation, focal length, and image orientation but excluding image comments and copyright information) and values for white balance and picture control as the photograph selected for **Image 1**. Overlays saved in NEF (RAW) format use the compression selected for **Type** in the **NEF (RAW) recording** menu and have the same bit depth as the original images; JPEG overlays are saved using size-priority compression. Vignette control (pg. 276) does not apply, even if both the original images were created using vignette control.

Side-by-Side Comparison

Compare retouched copies to the original photographs.

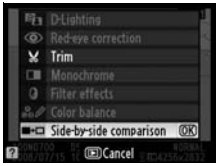
▮▮ *Making a Side-by-Side Comparison*

1 **Select a picture.**

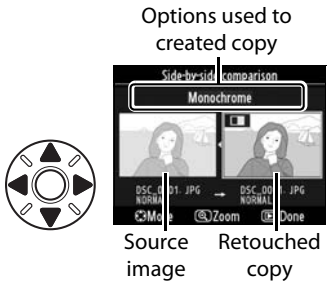
Use the multi selector to select a picture and press ⊛. Only retouched copies (shown by a ✎ icon) or photographs that have been retouched can be selected.

2 **Select Side-by-side comparison.**

Highlight **Side-by-side comparison** and press ⊛.



3 Compare the copy with the original.



The source image is displayed on the left, the retouched copy on the right, with the options used to create the copy listed at the top of the display. Press the multi selector in the direction indicated by the arrow adjacent to the highlighted image (▲ ▼ ◀ or ▶) to switch between the source image and the retouched copy. To view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the 🔍 button. If the copy was created from two images using **Image overlay**, press ▲ or ▼ to view the other source image. To exit to playback mode, press the ▶ button. To exit to playback mode with the highlighted image displayed, press ⊛ or the center of the multi selector.

Side-by-Side Comparison

The source image will not be displayed if the copy was created from a photograph that has since been deleted, is currently protected (pg. 235) or hidden (pg. 263), or contains embedded image authentication information (pg. 342).

My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu

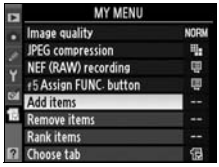
The **My Menu** option can be used to create and edit a customized list of options from the playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, and retouch menus for quick access (up to 20 items). If desired, recent settings can be displayed in place of My Menu (pg. 368).

Options can be added, deleted, and reordered as described below. For information on basic menu operations, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

Adding Options to My Menu

1 Select **Add items.**

In My Menu (), highlight **Add items** and press ▶.

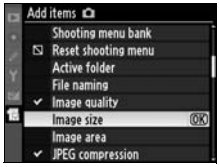


2 Select a menu.

Highlight the name of the menu containing the option you wish to add and press ▶.

3 Select an item.

Highlight the desired menu item and press OK.

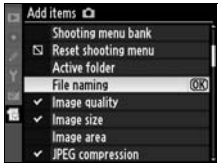


4 Position the new item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to move the new item up or down in My Menu. Press ⊛ to add the new item.

5 View My Menu.

The items currently displayed in My Menu are indicated by a check mark. Items indicated by a ⊠ icon can not be selected. Repeat steps 1–4 to select additional items.



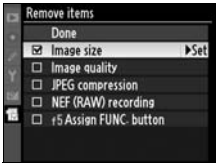
Deleting Options from My Menu

1 Select **Remove items.**

In My Menu (), highlight **Remove items** and press ▶.

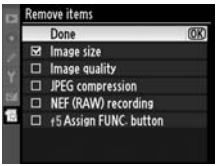
2 Select items.

Highlight items and press ▶ to select or deselect. Selected items are indicated by a check mark.



3 Select **Done.**

Highlight **Done** and press OK. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



4 Delete the selected items.

Press OK to delete the selected items.

Deleting Items in My Menu

To delete the item currently highlighted in My Menu, press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press 🗑 again to remove the selected item from My Menu.

Reordering Options in My Menu

1 Select **Rank items.**

In My Menu (), highlight **Rank items** and press ▶.

2 Select an item.

Highlight the item you wish to move and press ⊛.

3 Position the item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to move the item up or down in My Menu and press ⊛. Repeat Steps 2–3 to reposition additional items.

Displaying Recent Settings

To display the twenty most recently used settings, select **Recent settings** for **My Menu** > **Choose tab**.

1 Select **Choose tab.**

In My Menu (), highlight **Choose tab** and press ▶.

2 Select **Recent Settings.**

Highlight **Recent settings** and press OK. The name of the menu will change from "MY MENU" to "RECENT SETTINGS."

Menu items will be added to the top of the recent settings menu as they are used. To view My Menu again, select **My Menu** for **Recent settings** > **Choose tab**.

Technical Notes

– Camera Care, Options, and Resources

This chapter covers the following topics:

Compatible Lenses ..... pg. 370

Optional Flash Units (Speedlights) ..... pg. 377

Other Accessories ..... pg. 385

Caring for the Camera ..... pg. 391

Storage ..... pg. 391
Cleaning ..... pg. 391
The Low-Pass Filter ..... pg. 392
"Clean Now" ..... pg. 392
"Clean at Startup/Shutdown" ..... pg. 393
Manual Cleaning ..... pg. 395

Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions ..... pg. 398

Troubleshooting ..... pg. 402

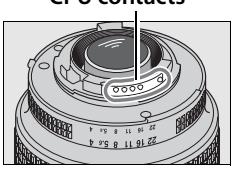
Error Messages ..... pg. 409

Appendix ..... pg. 417

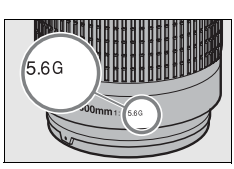
Specifications ..... pg. 428

Compatible Lenses

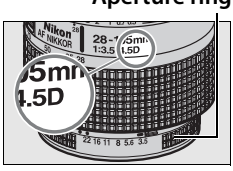
CPU lenses (particularly types G and D) are recommended for use with the D700. CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts, type G and D lenses by a letter on the lens barrel. Type G lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring.



CPU lens



Type G lens



Type D lens

Compatible CPU Lenses [1]

Camera setting / Lens/accessory	Focus mode			Exposure mode		Metering system		
	S C	M (with electronic rangefinder)	M	P S	A M	3D	Color	
Type G or D AF Nikkor [2] AF-S, AF-I Nikkor	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔ [3]
PC-E NIKKOR series	—	✔ [4]	✔	✔ [4]	✔ [4]	✔ [4]	—	✔ [3, 4]
PC Micro 85mm f/2.8D [5]	—	✔ [4]	✔	—	✔ [6]	✔	—	✔ [3, 4]
AF-S / AF-I Teleconverter [7]	✔ [8]	✔ [8]	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔ [3]
Other AF Nikkor (except lenses for F3AF)	✔ [9]	✔ [9]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔ [3]
AI-P Nikkor	—	✔ [10]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔ [3]

1 IX-Nikkor lenses can not be used.
2 Vibration Reduction (VR) supported with VR lenses.
3 Spot metering meters selected focus point.
4 Can not be used with shifting or tilting.
5 The camera's exposure metering and flash control systems do not work properly when shifting and/or tilting the lens, or when an aperture other than the maximum aperture is used.
6 Manual exposure mode only.
7 Can be used with AF-S and AF-I lenses only (pg. 371).
8 With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

9 When focusing at minimum focus distance with AF 80–200mm f/2.8, AF 35–70mm f/2.8, AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 <New>, or AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 lens at maximum zoom, in-focus indicator may be displayed when image on matte screen in viewfinder is not in focus. Adjust focus manually until image in viewfinder is in focus.

10 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

The AF-S/AF-I Teleconverter

The AF-S/AF-I teleconverter can be used with the following AF-S and AF-I lenses:

- AF-S VR Micro 105mm f/2.8G ED [1]
- AF-S VR 200mm f/2G ED
- AF-S VR 300mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S 300mm f/2.8D ED II
- AF-S 300mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-I 300mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S 300mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S NIKKOR 400mm f/2.8G ED VR
- AF-S 400mm f/2.8D ED II
- AF-S 400mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-I 400mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 500mm f/4G ED VR [2]
- AF-S 500mm f/4D ED II [2]
- AF-S 500mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-I 500mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S NIKKOR 600mm f/4G ED VR [2]
- AF-S 600mm f/4D ED II [2]
- AF-S 600mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-I 600mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S VR 70–200mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S 80–200mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S VR 200–400mm f/4G ED [2]

1 Autofocus not supported.

2 Autofocus not supported when used with AF-S Teleconverter TC-17E II/TC-20E II.

Lens f-number

The f-number given in lens names is the maximum aperture of the lens.

Non-CPU Lenses [1]

Non-CPU lenses include manual focus lenses and other lenses without a built-in CPU. The following is a list of compatible non-CPU lenses and accessories.

Camera setting / Lens/accessory	Focus mode			Exposure mode		Metering system		
	S C	M (with electronic rangefinder)	M	P S	A M	3D	Color	
AI-, AI-modified, Nikkor or Nikon Series E lenses [2]	—	✔ [3]	✔	—	✔ [4]	—	✔ [5]	✔ [6]
Medical-Nikkor 120mm f/4	—	✔	✔	—	✔ [7]	—	—	—
Reflex-Nikkor	—	—	✔	—	✔ [4]	—	—	✔ [6]
PC-Nikkor	—	✔ [8]	✔	—	✔ [9]	—	—	✔
AI-type Teleconverter [10]	—	✔ [11]	✔	—	✔ [4]	—	✔ [5]	✔ [6]
PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment [12]	—	✔ [11]	✔	—	✔ [13]	—	—	✔
Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)	—	✔ [11]	✔	—	✔ [4]	—	—	✔

1 Some lenses can not be used (pg. 373).
2 Range of rotation for AI 80–200mm f/2.8 ED tripod mount is limited by camera body. Filters can not be exchanged while AI 200–400mm f/4 ED is mounted on camera.
3 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
4 If maximum aperture is specified using **Non-CPU lens data** (pg. 210), aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and control panel.
5 Can be used only if lens focal length and maximum aperture are specified using **Non-CPU lens data** (pg. 210). Use spot or center-weighted metering if desired results are not achieved.
6 For improved precision, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture using **Non-CPU lens data** (pg. 210).
7 Can be used in manual exposure modes at shutter speeds slower than $^1/_{125}$ s.
8 Electronic rangefinder can not be used with shifting or tilting.
9 Exposure determined by presetting lens aperture. In aperture-priority auto exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring before performing AE lock or shifting lens. In manual exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring and determine exposure before shifting lens.
10 Exposure compensation required when used with AI 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5, AI 35–105mm f/3.5–4.5, AI 35–135mm f/3.5–4.5, or AF-S 80–200mm f/2.8D. See teleconverter manual for details.
11 With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

12 Requires PK-12 or PK-13 auto extension ring. PB-6D may be required depending on camera orientation.
13 Use preset aperture. In aperture-priority auto exposure mode, set aperture using focusing attachment before determining exposure and taking photograph.

• PF-4 Reprocopy Outfit requires PA-4 Camera Holder.

Compatible Non-CPU Lenses

If lens data are specified using **Non-CPU lens data** (pg. 210), many of the features available with CPU lenses can also be used with non-CPU lenses. If lens data are not specified, color matrix metering can not be used, and center-weighted metering is used when matrix metering is selected.

Non-CPU lenses can only be used in exposure modes **A** and **M**, when aperture must be set using the lens aperture ring. If the maximum aperture has not been specified using **Non-CPU lens data**, the camera aperture display will show the number of stops from maximum aperture; the actual aperture value must be read off the lens aperture ring. Aperture-priority auto will be selected automatically in exposure modes **P** and **S**. The exposure-mode indicator (**P** or **S**) in the control panel will blink, and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder.

Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses can NOT be used with the D700:

- TC-16AS AF teleconverter
- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400mm f/4.5, 600mm f/5.6, 800mm f/8, 1200mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6mm f/5.6, 7.5mm f/5.6, 8mm f/8, OP 10mm f/5.6)
- 2.1cm f/4
- Extension Ring K2
- 180–600mm f/8 ED (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- 360–1200mm f/11 ED (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- AF lenses for the F3AF (AF 80mm f/2.8, AF 200mm f/3.5 ED, AF Teleconverter TC-16)
- PC 28mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35mm f/3.5 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/6.3 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/11 (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- Reflex 2000mm f/11 (serial numbers 200111–200310)

The Built-in Flash

The built-in flash can be used with CPU lenses with focal lengths of 24 mm (16 mm in DX format) to 300mm. Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows. The flash has a minimum range of 60 cm (2 ft.) and can not be used in the macro range of macro zoom lenses. The flash may be unable to light the entire subject with the following lenses at ranges less than those given below:

	Lens	Zoom position	Min. range
DX	AF-S DX 12–24mm f/4G ED	18 mm	0.6 m/2 ft.
	AF-S DX 17–55mm f/2.8G ED	20 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.
FX	AF-S 17–35mm f/2.8D ED	28 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	AF 18–35mm f/3.5–4.5D ED	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	AF 20–35mm f/2.8D	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	PC-E NIKKOR 24mm f/3.5D ED	24 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.
	AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED	35 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	AF-S VR 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G ED	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	AF-S 28–70mm f/2.8D ED	35 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.

When used with the AF-S NIKKOR 14–24mm f/2.8G ED, the flash will be unable to light the entire subject at all ranges.

The built-in flash can also be used with AI-, AI-modified Nikkor, Nikon Series E and non-CPU lenses with a focal length of 24–300mm. AI 50–300mm f/4.5, modified AI 50–300mm f/4.5, and AI-S 50–300mm f/4.5 ED lenses must be used at a zoom position of 180mm or above, and AI 50–300mm f/4.5 ED lenses at a zoom position of 135mm or above.

☑ Red-Eye Reduction

Lenses that block the subject's view of the AF-assist illuminator may interfere with red-eye reduction.

☑ AF-Assist Illumination

The AF-assist illuminator can be used with lenses with focal lengths of 24–200 mm. AF-assist illumination is not available with the following lenses:

- AF-S VR 200mm f/2G ED
- AF-S VR 200–400mm f/4G ED

At ranges under 0.7 m (2 ft. 4 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF Micro 200mm f/4D ED
- AF-S DX 17–55mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S VR 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED
- AF Micro 70–180mm f/4.5–5.6D ED
- AF-S 28–70mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S 17–35mm f/2.8D ED

At ranges under 1.1 m (3 ft. 7 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF-S DX VR 55–200mm f/4–5.6G ED

At ranges under 1.5 m (4 ft. 11 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF-S VR 70–200mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S VR 70–300mm f/4.5–5.6G ED
- AF-S 80–200mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 14–24mm f/2.8G ED
- AF 80–200mm f/2.8D ED

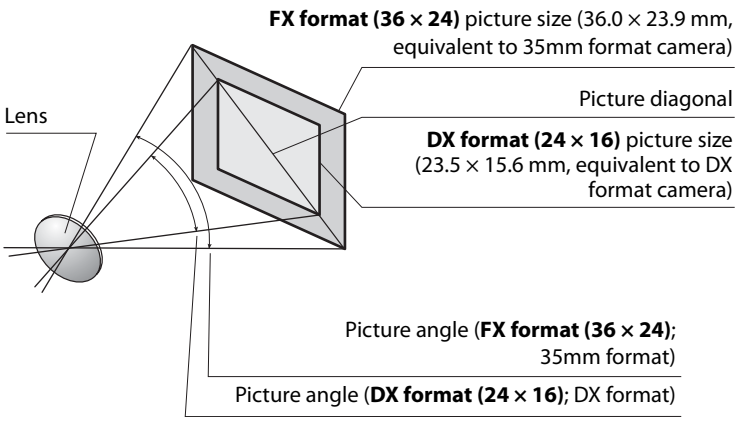
At ranges under 2.3 m (7 ft. 7 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF VR 80–400mm f/4.5–5.6D ED

Calculating Picture Angle

The D700 can be used with Nikon lenses for 35mm (135) format cameras. If **Auto DX crop** is on (the default setting) and a 35mm format lens is attached, the picture angle will be the same as a frame of 35mm film (36.0 × 23.9 mm); if a DX lens is attached, the picture angle will automatically be adjusted to 23.5 × 15.6 mm (DX format).

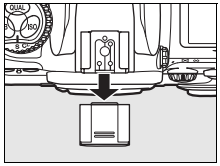
To choose a picture angle different from that of the current lens, turn **Auto DX crop** off and select **FX format (36 × 24)** or **DX format (24 × 16)**. If a 35 mm format lens is attached, the picture angle could be reduced by 1.5 × by selecting **DX format (24 × 16)**, exposing a smaller area.



The **DX format (24 × 16)** picture angle is about 1.5 times smaller than the 35mm format picture angle. To calculate the focal length of lenses in 35mm format when **DX format (24 × 16)** is selected, multiply the focal length of the lens by about 1.5 (for example, the effective focal length of a 50mm lens in 35mm format would be 75 mm when **DX format (24 × 16)** is selected).

Optional Flash Units (Speedlights)

The D700 can be used with CLS-compatible flash units. Remove the accessory shoe cover when attaching optional flash units. The built-in flash will not fire when an optional flash unit is attached.



The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)

Nikon's advanced Creative Lighting System (CLS) offers improved communication between the camera and compatible flash units for improved flash photography. The Creative Lighting System supports the following features:

- **i-TTL flash control**: Improved through-the-lens (TTL) flash control for use with CLS (see page 184). Flash level is set using monitor pre-flashes to measure the light reflected by the subject, ensuring optimal flash output.
- **Advanced Wireless Lighting**: Allows i-TTL flash control with remote wireless flash units.
- **FV lock** (pg. 192): Locks flash level at the metered value, allowing a series of photographs to be taken at the same flash level.
- **Auto FP High-Speed Sync** (pg. 306): Allows the flash to be used at the highest shutter speed supported by the camera, making it possible to choose the maximum aperture for reduced depth of field.

■■ *CLS-Compatible Flash Units*

The D700 can be used with the following CLS-compatible flash units: the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-R200, and SU-800.

The SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200

The principal features of these flash units are listed below.

Feature \ Flash unit		SB-900 [1]	SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	SB-R200 [2]
Guide No. [3]	ISO 100	34/111	38/125	30/98	21/69	10/32
	ISO 200	48/157	53/175	42/138	30/98	14/49
Auto power zoom (mm)		17–200	24–105	24–85	— [4]	— [5]
Wide panel (mm)		12, 14, 17	14, 17	14	—	—
Head rotation		7 ° down, 90 ° up, 180 ° left and right	7 ° down, 90 ° up, 180 ° left, 90 ° right	90 ° up, 180 ° left, 90 ° right	90 ° up	60 ° down (toward lens light axis), 45 ° up (away from light axis)

1 If a color filter is attached to the SB-900 when AUTO or ⚡ (flash) is selected for white balance, the camera will automatically detect the filter and adjust white balance appropriately.
2 Controlled remotely with built-in flash in commander mode or using optional SB-900, SB-800 flash unit or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander.
3 m/ft., 20 °C (68 °F); SB-900, SB-800 and SB-600 at 35 mm zoom head position; SB-900 with standard illumination.
4 27 mm zoom coverage.
5 24 mm zoom coverage.

SU-800 Wireless Speedlight Commander

When mounted on a CLS-compatible camera, the SU-800 can be used as a commander for remote SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash units. The SU-800 itself is not equipped with a flash.

Guide Number

To calculate the range of the flash at full power, divide the Guide Number by the aperture. For example, at ISO 100 the SB-800 has a Guide Number of 38 m or 125 ft. (35 mm zoom head position); its range at an aperture of f/5.6 is 38 ÷ 5.6 or about 6.8 meters (or in feet, 125 ÷ 5.6 = approximately 23 ft. 7 in.). For each twofold increase in ISO sensitivity, multiply the Guide Number by the square root of two (approximately 1.4).

The following features are available with the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-R200, and SU-800:

Flash mode/feature		Flash unit: SB-900 SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	Advanced Wireless Lighting: Commander SB-900 SB-800	Commander SU-800 [1]	Remote SB-900 SB-800	Remote SB-600	Remote SB-R200
i-TTL	i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR	✔[2]	✔[2]	✔[3]	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AA	Auto aperture	✔[4]	—	—	✔[5]	✔[5]	✔[5]	—	—
A	Non-TTL auto	✔[6]	—	—	✔[5]	—	✔[5]	—	—
GN	Distance-priority manual	✔	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
M	Manual	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
RPT	Repeating flash	✔	—	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	—
Auto FP High-Speed Sync[7]		✔	✔	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
FV lock		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AF-assist for multi-area AF[8]		✔	✔	—	✔	✔	—	—	—
Flash Color Information Communication		✔	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
REAR	Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
👁	Red-eye reduction	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
Auto zoom		✔	✔	—	✔	—	—	—	—

1 Only available when SU-800 is used to control other flash units.
2 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering or when selected with flash unit.
3 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering.
4 Selected with flash unit. Non-TTL auto (**A**) selected automatically if non-CPU lens is attached without specifying lens data using **Non-CPU lens data**.
5 Auto aperture (**AA**) is used regardless of mode selected with flash unit. Non-TTL auto (**A**) selected automatically if non-CPU lens is attached without specifying lens data using **Non-CPU lens data**.
6 Selected with flash unit.
7 Select **1/320 s (Auto FP)** or **1/250 s (Auto FP)** for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**, pg. 305).
8 CPU lens required.

Other Flash Units

The following flash units can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes. If they are set to TTL, the camera shutter-release button will lock and no photographs can be taken.

Flash mode \ Speedlight	SB-80DX, SB-28DX, SB-28, SB-26, SB-25, SB-24	SB-50DX	SB-30, SB-27 [1], SB-22S, SB-22, SB-20, SB-16B, SB-15	SB-23, SB-29 [2], SB-21B [2], SB-29S [2]
A Non-TTL auto	✔	—	✔	—
M Manual	✔	✔	✔	✔
Repeating flash	✔	—	—	—
REAR Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔

1 Flash mode is automatically set to TTL and shutter-release is disabled. Set flash unit to **A** (non-TTL auto flash).

2 Autofocus is only available with AF-Micro lenses (60 mm, 105 mm, or 200 mm).

Notes on Optional Speedlights

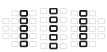
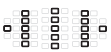
Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the Speedlight supports the Nikon Creative Lighting System, refer to the section on CLS-compatible digital SLR cameras. The D700 is not included in the "digital SLR" category in the SB-80DX, SB-28DX, and SB-50DX manuals.

i-TTL flash control can be used at ISO sensitivities between 200 and 6400. At values over 6400, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings. If the flash-ready indicator blinks for about three seconds after a photograph is taken, the flash has fired at full power and the photograph may be underexposed.

The SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400 provide red-eye reduction, while the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SU-800 provide AF-assist illumination. With other Speedlights, the camera AF-assist illuminator is used for AF-assist illumination and red-eye reduction. When used with AF lenses with focal lengths of 17–135 mm, the SB-900 provides active AF-assist illumination for all focus points; note, however, that autofocus is available only with the following focus points:

17–19 mm		20–105 mm		106–135 mm	

When used with AF lenses with focal lengths of 24–105 mm, the SB-800, SB-600, and SU-800 provides active AF-assist illumination to assist autofocus for the following focus points:

24–34 mm		35–49 mm		50–105 mm	

In programmed auto, the maximum aperture (minimum f-number) is limited according to sensitivity (ISO equivalency), as shown below:

Maximum aperture at ISO equivalent of:					
200	400	800	1600	3200	6400
5	5.6	7.1	8	10	11

For each one-step increase in sensitivity (e.g., from 200 to 400), aperture is stopped down by half an f-stop. If the maximum aperture of the lens is smaller than given above, the maximum value for aperture will be the maximum aperture of the lens.

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.

In i-TTL, use the flash panel or bounce adapter provided with the flash unit. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.

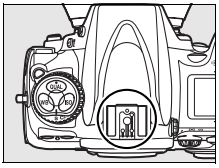
Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories

Use only Nikon Speedlights. Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon Speedlight not listed in this section, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.

Flash Contacts

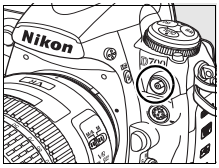
The D700 is equipped with an accessory shoe for attaching optional flash units directly to the camera and a sync terminal that allows flash units to be connected via a sync cable.

■■ *The Accessory Shoe*



Use the accessory shoe to mount optional flash units directly on the camera without a sync cable (pg. 378). The accessory shoe is equipped with a safety lock for Speedlights with a locking pin, such as the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600 and SB-400.

■■ *The Sync Terminal*



A sync cable can be connected to the sync terminal as required. Do not connect another flash unit via a sync cable when performing rear-curtain sync flash photography with a flash unit mounted on the camera accessory shoe.

☑ ISO Sensitivity

When auto ISO sensitivity control is on (pg. 108), ISO sensitivity will automatically be adjusted as required for optimal flash output when an optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-400 flash unit is attached. This may result in foreground subjects being underexposed in photographs taken with the flash at slow shutter speeds, in daylight, or against a bright background. In these cases, choose a flash mode other than slow sync or choose a larger aperture.

Other Accessories

At the time of writing, the following accessories were available for the D700.

Power sources	• **Rechargeable Li-ion Battery EN-EL3e** (pp. 32, 34): Additional EN-EL3e batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon service representatives. The EN-EL3e can be recharged using an MH-18a or MH-18 quick charger. • **Multi-Power Battery Pack MB-D10**: The MB-D10 takes one rechargeable Nikon EN-EL3e, EN-EL4a, or EN-EL4 Li-ion battery or eight AA alkaline, NiMH, lithium, or nickel-manganese batteries. A BL-3 battery-chamber cover is required when using EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 batteries. It is equipped with a shutter-release button, **AF-ON** button, multi selector, and main- and sub-command dials for improved operation when taking photographs in portrait (tall) orientation. When attaching the MB-D10, remove contact cover for the MB-D10 from the camera. • **Quick Charger MH-18a** (pg. 32): The MH-18a can be used to recharge EN-EL3e battery. • **AC Adapter EH-5a/EH-5**: These AC adapters can be used to power the camera for extended periods.
Wireless LAN adapters	• **Wireless Transmitter WT-4**: Connects the camera to wireless and Ethernet networks. The photographs on the camera memory card can be viewed by computers on the same network or copied to a computer for long-term storage. The camera can also be controlled from any computer on the network using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately). Note that the WT-4 requires an independent power source; an EH-6 AC adapter or a second EN-EL3e battery is recommended. See the WT-4 manual for details.

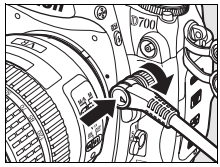
Viewfinder eyepiece accessories	• **DK-17C Diopter-Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses (with Safety Lock)**: To accommodate individual differences in vision, viewfinder lenses are available with diopters of –3, –2, 0, +1, +2 m^{-1}. Use diopter adjustment lenses only if the desired focus can not be achieved with the built-in diopter adjustment control (–3 to +1 m^{-1}). Test diopter adjustment lenses before purchase to ensure that the desired focus can be achieved. • **Magnifying Eyepiece DK-17M (with Safety Lock)**: The DK-17M magnifies the view through the viewfinder by approximately 1.2 × for greater precision when framing. • **Magnifier DG-2**: The DG-2 magnifies the scene displayed in the viewfinder. Use for close-up photography, copying, telephoto lenses, and other tasks that call for added precision. DK-18 eyepiece adapter (available separately) required. • **Eyepiece Adapter DK-18**: The DK-18 is used when attaching the DG-2 magnifier or DR-3 right-angle viewing attachment to the D700. • **Antifog Finder Eyepiece DK-14, DK-17A**: These viewfinder eyepieces prevent fogging in humid or cold conditions. The DK-17A is equipped with a safety lock. • **Rubber Eyepiece Cup DK-19**: The DK-19 makes the image in the viewfinder easier to see, preventing eye fatigue. • **Right-Angle Viewing Attachment DR-5/DR-4**: The DR-5 and DR-4 attach to the viewfinder eyepiece at a right angle, allowing the image in the viewfinder to be viewed from above when the camera is in the horizontal shooting position. The DR-5 can also magnify the view through the viewfinder by 2 × for greater precision when framing (note that the edges of the frame will not be visible when the view is magnified).

Filters	• Nikon filters can be divided into three types: screw-in, slip-in, and rear-interchange. Use Nikon filters; filters manufactured by other makers may interfere with autofocus or electronic range finding. • The D700 can not be used with linear polarizing filters. Use the C-PL circular polarizing filter instead. • The NC and L37C filters are recommended for protecting the lens. • To prevent moiré, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame. • Center-weighted metering is recommended with filters with exposure factors (filter factors) over 1× (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4, ND4S, ND8, ND8S, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12).
Water guards	**Water Guard WG-AS3**: Covers the base of the optional SB-900 flash unit to protect the camera accessory shoe from water droplets.
Optional flash units	• **Nikon Speedlights SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400** • **Nikon Wireless Remote Speedlight SB-R200** • **Wireless Speedlight Commander SU-800** See page 378 for more information.
PC card adapters	• **PC Card Adapter EC-AD1**: The EC-AD1 PC card adapter allows Type I CompactFlash memory cards to be inserted in PCMCIA card slots.

Software	• **Capture NX 2**: A complete photo editing package. • **Camera Control Pro 2**: Control the camera remotely from a computer and save photographs directly to the computer hard disk. • **Image Authentication**: Determine whether photographs taken with image authentication (pg. 342) on have been modified after shooting. **Note**: Use the latest versions of Nikon software. Most Nikon software offers an auto update feature when the computer is connected to the Internet.
Body cap	• **Body Cap**: The body cap keeps the mirror, viewfinder screen, and low-pass filter free of dust when a lens is not in place.

Remote terminal accessories

The D700 is equipped with a ten-pin remote terminal for remote control and automatic photography. The terminal is provided with a cap, which protects the contacts when the terminal is not in use. The following accessories can be used (all lengths are approximate):



Accessory	Description	Length
Remote Cord MC-22	Remote shutter release with blue, yellow, and black terminals for connection to a remote shutter-triggering device, allowing control via sound or electronic signals.	1 m (3 ft. 3 in.)
Remote Cord MC-30	Remote shutter release; can be used to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure.	80 cm (2 ft. 7 in.)
Remote Cord MC-36	Remote shutter release; can be used for interval timer photography or to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure. Equipped with back-lit control panel, shutter-release lock for use in bulb photography, and timer that beeps at one-second intervals.	85 cm (2 ft. 9 in.)
Extension Cord MC-21	Can be connected to ML-3 or MC-series 20, 22, 23, 25, 30, or 36. Only one MC-21 can be used at a time.	3 m (9 ft. 10 in.)
Connecting Cord MC-23	Connects two cameras for simultaneous operation.	40 cm (1 ft. 4 in.)
Adapter Cord MC-25	Ten-pin to two-pin adapter cord for connection to devices with two-pin terminals, including the MW-2 radio control set, MT-2 intervalometer, and ML-2 modulite control set.	20 cm (8 in.)
GPS Adapter Cord MC-35	Connects GPS devices to D700 via PC cable supplied by manufacturer of GPS device (pg. 213).	35 cm (14 in.)
Modulite Remote Control Set ML-3	Allows infrared remote control at ranges of up to 8 m (26 ft.).	–

■■ *Approved Memory Cards*

The following Type I CompactFlash memory cards have been tested and approved for use in the D700:

SanDisk	Extreme IV	SDCFX4	8 GB, 4 GB, 2 GB
	Extreme III	SDCFX3	8 GB, 4 GB, 2 GB, 1 GB
	Ultra II	SDCFH	
	Standard	SDCFB	4 GB, 2 GB, 1 GB
Lexar Media	Professional UDMA	300 ×	8 GB, 4 GB, 2 GB
	Platinum II	80 ×	2 GB, 1 GB, 512 MB
		60 ×	4 GB
	Professional	133 × WA	8 GB, 4 GB, 2 GB, 1 GB

Other cards have not been tested. For more details on the above cards, please contact the manufacturer.

Caring for the Camera

Storage

When the camera will not be used for an extended period, replace the monitor cover, remove the battery, and store the battery in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:

- are poorly ventilated or subject to humidities of over 60%
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50 °C (122 °F) or below –10 °C (14 °F)

Cleaning

Camera body	Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off sand or salt with a cloth lightly dampened in distilled water and dry thoroughly. **Important**: *Dust or other foreign matter inside the camera may cause damage not covered under warranty.*
Lens, mirror, and viewfinder	These glass elements are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.
Monitor	Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.

Do not use alcohol, thinner, or other volatile chemicals.

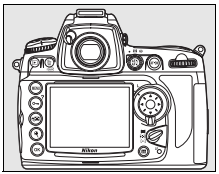
The Low-Pass Filter

The image sensor that acts as the camera's picture element is fitted with a low-pass filter to prevent moiré. If you suspect that dirt or dust on the filter is appearing in photographs, you can clean the filter using the **Clean image sensor** option in the setup menu. The filter can be cleaned at any time using the **Clean now** option, or cleaning can be performed automatically when the camera is turned on or off.

■■ *"Clean Now"*

1 Place the camera base down.

Image sensor cleaning is most effective when the camera is placed base down as shown at right.



2 Display the **Clean image sensor** menu.

Highlight **Clean image sensor** in the setup menu and press ▶.

Image Dust Off

The Image Dust Off option in Capture NX 2 can not use dust off reference data recorded before image sensor cleaning is performed to retouch photographs taken after image sensor cleaning is performed. If you intend to use Image Dust Off with photographs recorded after image sensor cleaning is performed, we recommend that you record dust off reference data after cleaning the image sensor.

Image Sensor Cleaning

If the options described in this section are not sufficient to remove dust or other foreign objects from the image sensor, clean the sensor manually as described on page 395.

3 Select **Clean now.**

Highlight **Clean now** and press ▶. The message shown at right will be displayed while cleaning is in progress.

The message shown at right will be displayed when cleaning is complete.

■■ *"Clean at Startup/Shutdown"*

1 Select **Clean at startup/ shutdown.**

Display the **Clean image sensor** menu as described in Step 2 on the previous page. Highlight **Clean at startup/ shutdown** and press ▶.

2 Select an option.

Highlight one of the following options and press ⊛.

Option	Description
ON **Clean at startup**	The image sensor is automatically cleaned each time the camera is turned on.
OFF **Clean at shutdown**	The image sensor is automatically cleaned during shutdown each time the camera is turned off.
ON OFF **Clean at startup & shutdown**	The image sensor is cleaned automatically at startup and at shutdown.
Cleaning off (default)	Automatic image sensor cleaning off.

Image Sensor Cleaning

The following interrupt image sensor cleaning: raising the built-in flash, pressing the shutter-release, depth-of-field preview, or **AF-ON** button, or using FV lock.

Cleaning is performed by vibrating the image sensor. If dust can not be fully removed using the options in the **Clean image sensor** menu, clean the image sensor manually (pg. 395) or consult a Nikon-authorized service representative.

If image sensor cleaning is performed several times in succession, image sensor cleaning may be temporarily disabled to protect the camera's internal circuitry. Cleaning can be performed again after a short wait.

■■ *Manual Cleaning*

If foreign matter can not be removed from the low-pass filter using the **Clean image sensor** (pg. 392) option in the setup menu, the filter can be cleaned manually as described below. Note, however, that the filter is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that the filter be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel.

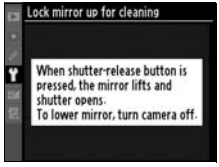
1 Charge the battery or connect an AC adapter.

A reliable power source is required when inspecting or cleaning the low-pass filter. If the battery level is below (60 %), turn the camera off and insert a fully-charged EN-EL3e battery or connect an optional EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter.

2 Select **Lock mirror up for cleaning.**

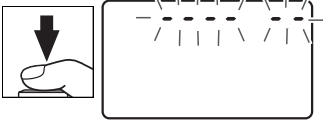
Remove the lens and turn the camera on. Highlight **Lock mirror up for cleaning** in the setup menu and press ▶ (note that this option is not available at battery levels of or below).

3 Press OK.



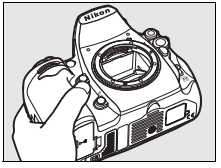
The message shown at right will be displayed in the monitor and a row of dashes will appear in the control panel and viewfinder. To restore normal operation without inspecting the low-pass filter, turn the camera off.

4 Raise the mirror.



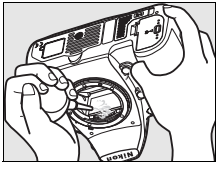
Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the low-pass filter. The display in the viewfinder will turn off and the row of dashes in the control panel will blink.

5 Examine the low-pass filter.



Holding the camera so that light falls on the low-pass filter, examine the filter for dust or lint. If no foreign objects are present, proceed to Step 7.

6 Clean the filter.



Remove any dust and lint from the filter with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the filter. Dirt that can not be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the filter.

7 Turn the camera off.

The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap.

☑ Use a Reliable Power Source

The shutter curtain is delicate and easily damaged. If the camera powers off while the mirror is raised, the curtain will close automatically. To prevent damage to the curtain, observe the following precautions:

- Do not turn the camera off or remove or disconnect the power source while the mirror is raised.
- If the battery runs low while the mirror is raised, a beep will sound and the self-timer lamp will blink to warn that the shutter curtain will close and the mirror will be lowered after about two minutes. End cleaning or inspection immediately.

☑ Foreign Matter on the Low-Pass Filter

Nikon takes every possible precaution to prevent foreign matter from coming into contact with the low-pass filter during production and shipping. The D700, however, is designed to be used with interchangeable lenses, and foreign matter may enter the camera when lenses are removed or exchanged. Once inside the camera, this foreign matter may adhere to the low-pass filter, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the body cap.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the low-pass filter, clean the filter as described above, or have the filter cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the filter can be retouched using Capture NX 2 (available separately; pg. 388) or the clean image options available in some third-party imaging applications.

☑ Servicing the Camera and Accessories

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional Speedlights, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions

Do not drop: The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

Keep dry: This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

Avoid sudden changes in temperature: Sudden changes in temperature, such as occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

Keep away from strong magnetic fields: Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product's internal circuitry.

Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun: Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun or other strong light source for an extended period. Intense light may cause the image sensor to deteriorate or produce a white blur effect in photographs.

Cleaning: When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to gently remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened in pure water and then dry the camera thoroughly. In rare instances, static electricity may cause the LCD displays to light up or go dark. This does not indicate a malfunction, and the display will soon return to normal.

The lens and mirror are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains from the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.

See "The Low-Pass Filter" (pp. 392, 395) for information on cleaning the low-pass filter.

Lens contacts: Keep the lens contacts clean.

Do not touch the shutter curtain: The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.

The shutter curtain may appear to be unevenly colored, but this has no affect on pictures and does not indicate a malfunction.

Storage: To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If the product will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.

To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting it away.

Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.

Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source: Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.

Notes on the monitor: The monitor may contain a few pixels that are always lit or that do not light. This is common to all TFT LCD monitors and does not indicate a malfunction. Images recorded with the product are unaffected.

Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.

Do not apply pressure to the monitor, as this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by wiping lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury from broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes and mouth.

Replace the monitor cover when transporting the camera or leaving it unattended.

Batteries: Dirt on the battery terminals can prevent the camera from functioning and should be removed with a soft, dry cloth before use.

Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries:

Turn the product off before replacing the battery.

The battery may become hot when used for extended periods. Observe due caution when handling the battery.

Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.

Do not expose the battery to flame or excessive heat.

After removing the battery from the camera, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Charge the battery before use. When taking photographs on important occasions, ready a spare EN-EL3e battery and keep it fully charged. Depending on your location, it may be difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice.

On cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.

Continuing to charge the battery after it is fully charged can impair battery performance.

Used batteries are a valuable resource. Please recycle used batteries in accord with local regulations.

Troubleshooting

If the camera fails to function as expected, check the list of common problems below before consulting your retailer or Nikon representative. Refer to the page numbers in the right-most column for more information.

■■ *Display*

Problem	Solution	Page
Viewfinder is out of focus.	Adjust viewfinder focus or use optional diopter adjustment lenses.	45
Viewfinder is dark.	Insert a fully-charged battery.	46
Displays turn off without warning.	Choose longer delays for Custom Setting c2 (**Auto meter-off delay**) or c4 (**Monitor off delay**).	296, 297
Unusual characters displayed in control panel.	See "A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras," below.	402
Displays in control panel or viewfinder are unresponsive and dim.	The response times and brightness of these displays varies with temperature.	—
Fine lines are visible around active focus point or display turns red when focus point is highlighted.	These phenomena are normal for this type of viewfinder and do not indicate a malfunction.	—

A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras

In extremely rare instances, unusual characters may appear in the control panel and the camera may stop functioning. In most cases, this phenomenon is caused by a strong external static charge. Turn the camera off, remove and replace the battery, and turn the camera on again, or, if you are using an AC adapter (available separately), disconnect and reconnect the adapter and turn the camera on again. In the event of continued malfunction, contact your retailer or Nikon-authorized service representative. Note that disconnecting the power source as described above may result in loss of any data not recorded to the memory card at the time the problem occurred. Data already recorded to the card will not be affected.

■■ *Shooting*

Problem	Solution	Page
Camera takes time to turn on.	Delete files or folders.	–
Shutter-release disabled.	• Memory card is full or not inserted.	41, 47
	• CPU lens with aperture ring attached but aperture not locked at highest f-number. If FE E is displayed in control panel, select **Aperture ring** for Custom Setting f9 (**Customize command dials**) > **Aperture setting** to use lens aperture ring to adjust aperture.	327
	• Exposure mode **S** selected with bulb selected for shutter speed.	118
Photos are out of focus.	• Rotate focus-mode selector to **S** or **C**.	72
	• Camera unable to focus using autofocus: use manual focus or focus lock.	78, 81
	• Shutter-release button can not be used to focus when **Tripod** is selected in live view mode. Use the **AF-ON** button to focus.	96

Problem	Solution	Page
Full range of shutter speeds not available.	Flash in use. Flash sync speed can be selected using Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**); when using optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 Speedlight, choose **1/320 s (Auto FP)** or **1/250 s (Auto FP)** for full range of shutter speeds.	305
Focus does not lock when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	Camera is in focus mode **C**: use **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock focus.	79
Image size can not be changed.	**Image quality** set to **NEF (RAW)**.	64
Can not select focus point	• Unlock focus selector lock. • Auto-area AF selected for focus mode: choose another mode. • The camera is in playback mode. • The camera is in menu operation. • Press shutter-release button halfway to turn monitor off or activate exposure meters.	76 74 217 259 48
Camera is slow to record photos.	Turn long exposure noise reduction off.	277
Photos not recorded in live view mode.	• Sound of mirror clicking down when shutter-release button was pressed halfway in hand-held mode was mistaken for sound of shutter. • Unless **Release** is chosen for Custom Setting a2 (**AF-S priority selection**), shutter release is disabled if camera is unable to focus when focus mode **S** is selected in hand-held mode.	95 95, 284

Problem	Solution	Page
Randomly-spaced bright pixels ("noise") appear in photos.	• Choose lower ISO sensitivity or turn high ISO noise reduction on. • Shutter speed is slower than 1 s: use long exposure noise reduction.	106, 278 277
AF-assist illuminator does not light.	• Camera is in focus mode **C**. • Center focus point is not selected for single-point AF or dynamic-area AF. • **Off** selected for Custom Setting a9 (**Built-in AF-assist illuminator**). • Illuminator has turned off automatically. Illuminator may become hot with continued use; wait for lamp to cool down.	72 74 290 —
Photos are blotched or smeared.	• Clean lens. • Clean low-pass filter.	— 392
Colors are unnatural.	• Adjust white balance to match light source. • Adjust **Set Picture Control** settings.	140 160

Problem	Solution	Page
Can not measure white balance.	Subject is too dark or too bright.	151
Image can not be selected as source for preset white balance.	Image was not created with D700.	154
White balance bracketing unavailable.	• NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG image quality option selected for image quality. • Multiple exposure mode is in effect.	64 202
Effects of Picture Control differ from image to image.	A (auto) is selected for sharpening, contrast, or saturation. For consistent results over a series of photographs, choose a setting other than A (auto).	166
Metering can not be changed.	• Autoexposure lock is in effect. • Camera is in live view mode.	126 100
Exposure compensation can not be used.	Choose exposure mode P, S, or A.	128
Reddish areas appear in photos.	Reddish areas and uneven textures may appear in long time-exposures. Turn long exposure noise reduction on when shooting at shutter speeds of "bulb".	277
Textures are uneven.		
Only one shot taken each time shutter-release button is pressed in continuous shooting mode.	Lower built-in flash.	187

■■ *Playback*

Problem	Solution	Page
Flashing areas appear in images	Press ▲ or ▼ to choose photo information displayed, or change settings for **Display mode**.	220, 264
Shooting data appear on images		
A graph appears during playback.		
NEF (RAW) image is not played back.	Photo was taken at image quality of NEF + JPEG.	66
Some photos are not displayed during playback.	Select **All** for **Playback folder**.	263
"Tall" (portrait) orientation photos are displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.	• Select **On** for **Rotate tall**. • Photo was taken with **Off** selected for **Auto image rotation**. • Photo is displayed in image review. • Camera was pointed up or down when photo was taken.	265 336 219 336
Can not delete photo.	Photo is protected: remove protection.	235
Message is displayed stating that no images are available for playback.	Select **All** for **Playback folder**.	263
Can not change print order.	Memory card is full: delete photos.	47
Can not select photo for printing.	Photo is in NEF (RAW) format. Transfer to computer and print using supplied software or Capture NX 2.	243
Photo is not displayed on TV.	Choose correct video mode.	333
Photo is not displayed on high-definition video device.	Confirm that HDMI cable (available separately) is connected.	257

Problem	Solution	Page
NEF (RAW) photos not displayed in Capture NX.	Update to Capture NX 2.	388
Image Dust Off option in Capture NX 2 does not have desired effect.	Image sensor cleaning changes the position of dust on the low-pass filter. Dust off reference data recorded before image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken after image sensor cleaning is performed. Dust off reference data recorded after image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken before image sensor cleaning is performed.	337
Computer displays NEF (RAW) images differently from camera.	Third-party software does not display effects of Picture Controls, active D-lighting, or vignette control. Use Capture NX 2 (available separately).	—
Can not copy picture to computer using Nikon Transfer.	The camera is not compatible with Windows 2000 Professional. Use card reader to copy pictures from memory card.	—

■■ *Miscellaneous*

Problem	Solution	Page
Date of recording is not correct.	Set camera clock.	38
Menu item can not be selected.	Some options are not available at certain combinations of settings or when no memory card is inserted. Note that **Battery info** option is not available when camera is powered by an optional AC adapter.	340

Error Messages

This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder, control panel, and monitor.

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
FE E (blinks)		Lens aperture ring is not set to minimum aperture.	Set ring to minimum aperture (largest f-number).	37
		Low battery.	Ready a fully-charged spare battery.	46
(blinks)	(blinks)	• Battery exhausted. • Battery can not be used. • An extremely exhausted rechargeable Li-ion battery or a third-party battery is inserted either in the camera or in the optional MB-D10 battery pack.	• Recharge or replace battery. • Contact Nikon-authorized service representative. • Replace the battery, or recharge the battery if the rechargeable Li-ion battery is exhausted.	xxiii, 32, 34

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
CLOCK (blinks)	—	Camera clock is not set.	Set camera clock.	38
AF		No lens attached, or non-CPU lens attached without specifying maximum aperture. Aperture shown in stops from maximum aperture.	Aperture value will be displayed if maximum aperture is specified.	210
—	▶ ◀ (blinks)	Camera unable to focus using autofocus.	Focus manually.	81
H i		Subject too bright; photo will be overexposed.	• Use a lower ISO sensitivity	106
			• In exposure mode:	
			P Use optional ND filter	387
			S Increase shutter speed	118
			A Choose a smaller aperture (larger f-number)	119

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
Lo		Subject too dark; photo will be underexposed.	• Use a higher ISO sensitivity • In exposure mode: P Use flash S Lower shutter speed A Choose a larger aperture (smaller f-number)	106 185 118 119
buLb (blinks)		buLb selected in exposure mode S.	Change shutter speed or select manual exposure mode.	118, 121

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
(blinks)	ϟ (blinks)	Optional flash unit that does not support i-TTL flash control attached and set to TTL.	Change flash mode setting on optional flash unit.	381
—	ϟ (blinks)	If indicator blinks for 3s after flash fires, photo may be underexposed.	Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again.	427
FuLL (blinks)	FuL (blinks)	Memory insufficient to record further photos at current settings, or camera has run out of file or folder numbers.	• Reduce quality or size. • Delete photographs. • Insert new memory card.	64, 69 262 41
Err (blinks)		Camera malfunction.	Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult Nikon-authorized service representative.	—

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
No memory card.	[- E -]	Camera cannot detect memory card.	Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted.	41
This memory card cannot be used. Card may be damaged. Insert another card.	[CHA] (blinks)	• Error accessing memory card.	• Use Nikon-approved card. • Check that contacts are clean. If card is damaged, contact retailer or Nikon representative.	390 —
		• Unable to create new folder.	• Delete files or insert new memory card.	41, 262

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
This card is not formatted. Format the card.	For (blinks)	Memory card has not been formatted for use in camera.	Format memory card or insert new memory card.	41,43
Folder contains no images.	—	No images on memory card or in folder(s) selected for playback.	Select folder containing images from **Playback folder** menu or insert different memory card.	41, 263
All images are hidden.	—	All photos in current folder are hidden.	No images can be played back until another folder has been selected or **Hide image** used to allow at least one image to be displayed.	263
File does not contain image data.	—	File has been created or modified using a computer or different make of camera, or file is corrupt.	File can not be played back on camera.	—

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
Cannot select this file.	—	Memory card does not contain images that can be retouched.	Images created with other devices can not be retouched.	350
Check printer.	—	Printer error.	Check printer. To resume, select **Continue** (if available).	244 *
Check paper.	—	Paper in printer is not of selected size.	Insert paper of correct size and select **Continue**.	244 *
Paper jam.	—	Paper is jammed in printer.	Clear jam and select **Continue**.	244 *
Out of paper.	—	Printer is out of paper.	Insert paper of selected size and select **Continue**.	244 *

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
Check ink supply.	—	Ink error.	Check ink. To resume, select **Continue**.	244*
Out of ink.	—	Printer is out of ink.	Replace ink and select **Continue**.	244*

* See printer manual for more information.

Appendix

The Appendix covers the following topics:

- Defaults ..... pg. 418
- Memory Card Capacity ..... pg. 423
- Exposure Program ..... pg. 426
- Aperture, Sensitivity, and Flash Range ..... pg. 427

Defaults

The following defaults are restored either with a two-button reset or using **Reset shooting menu** or **Reset custom settings**.

■■ *Defaults Restored with a Two-Button Reset (pg. 196)* [1]

	Option	Default
Shooting menu [2]	**ISO sensitivity** (pg. 106)	200
	Image quality (pg. 64)	JPEG normal
	Image size (pg. 69)	**L**
	White balance (pg. 140)	Auto
	Fine tuning (pg. 143)	Off
	Choose color temp. (pg. 147)	5000 K
Other settings	Focus point (pg. 76)	Center
	Exposure mode (pg. 114)	Programmed auto
	Flexible program (pg. 117)	Off
	AE lock hold (pg. 126)	Off
	Exposure compensation (pg. 128)	Off
	Flash compensation (pg. 190)	Off
	Bracketing (pg. 130)	Off
	Flash mode (pg. 188)	Front-curtain sync
	FV lock (pg. 192)	Off
	Multiple exposure (pg. 198)	Off

1 If the current Picture Control has been modified, existing settings for the Picture Control will also be restored.

2 Only the settings in the bank currently selected using the **Shooting menu bank** option will be reset (pg. 269). Settings in all other banks are unaffected.

■■ *Defaults Restored with Reset Shooting Menu (pg. 271)* [1]

Option	Default
File naming (pg. 274)	DSC
Image quality (pg. 64)	JPEG normal
Image size (pg. 69)	Large
Image area (pg. 58)	
Auto DX crop (pg. 58)	On
Choose image area (pg. 59)	FX format (36 X 24)
JPEG compression (pg. 67)	Size priority
NEF (RAW) recording (pg. 67)	
Type (pg. 67)	Lossless compressed
NEF (RAW) bit depth (pg. 68)	12-bit
White balance (pg. 140)	Auto
Fine tuning (pg. 143)	Off
Choose color temp. (pg. 147)	5000K
Set Picture Control (pg. 160)	Standard
Color space (pg. 181)	sRGB
Active D-lighting (pg. 180)	Off
Vignette control (pg. 276)	Normal
Long exp. NR (pg. 277)	Off
High ISO NR (pg. 278)	Normal
ISO sensitivity settings (pg. 106)	
ISO sensitivity (pg. 106)	200
ISO sensitivity auto control (pg. 108)	Off
Live view	
Live view mode (pg. 90)	Hand-held
Release mode (pg. 91)	Single frame
Multiple exposure (pg. 198)	Reset [2]
Interval timer shooting (pg. 203)	Reset [3]

1 With the exception of **Multiple exposure** and **Interval timer shooting**, only settings in the current shooting menu bank will be reset.

2 Applies to all banks. **Reset shooting menu** can not be selected while shooting is in progress.

3 Applies to all banks. Shooting ends when reset is performed.

■■ *Defaults Restored with Reset Custom Settings (pg. 282)* *

	Option	Default
a1	**AF-C priority selection** (pg. 283)	Release
a2	**AF-S priority selection** (pg. 284)	Focus
a3	**Dynamic AF area** (pg. 285)	9 points
a4	**Focus tracking with lock-on** (pg. 287)	Normal
a5	**AF activation** (pg. 287)	Shutter/AF-ON
a6	**AF point illumination** (pg. 288)	Auto
a7	**Focus point wrap-around** (pg. 288)	No wrap
a8	**AF point selection** (pg. 289)	51 points
a9	**Built-in AF-assist illuminator** (pg. 290)	On
a10	**AF-ON for MB-D10** (pg. 291)	AF-ON
b1	**ISO sensitivity step value** (pg. 292)	1/3 step
b2	**EV steps for exposure cntrl.** (pg. 292)	1/3 step
b3	**Exp comp/fine tune** (pg. 292)	1/3 step
b4	**Easy exposure compensation** (pg. 293)	Off
b5	**Center-weighted area** (pg. 294)	Ø 12 mm
b6	**Fine tune optimal exposure** (pg. 294)	
	Matrix metering	0
	Center-weighted	0
	Spot metering	0
c1	**Shutter-release button AE-L** (pg. 296)	Off
c2	**Auto meter-off delay** (pg. 296)	6 s
c3	**Self-timer delay** (pg. 297)	10 s
c4	**Monitor off delay** (pg. 297)	
	Playback	10 s
	Menus	20 s
	Shooting info display	10 s
	Image review	4 s

* Only the settings in the bank currently selected using the **Custom setting bank** option will be reset (pg. 282). Settings in all other banks are unaffected.

	Option	Default
d1	**Beep** (pg. 298)	High
d2	**Viewfinder grid display** (pg. 298)	Off
d3	**Screen tips** (pg. 298)	On
d4	**CL mode shooting speed** (pg. 299)	3 fps
d5	**Max. continuous release** (pg. 299)	100
d6	**File number sequence** (pg. 300)	On
d7	**Shooting info display** (pg. 301)	Auto
d8	**LCD illumination** (pg. 302)	Off
d9	**Exposure delay mode** (pg. 302)	Off
d10	**MB-D10 battery type** (pg. 302)	LR6 (AA alkaline)
d11	**Battery order** (pg. 304)	Use MB-D10 batteries first
e1	**Flash sync speed** (pg. 305)	1/250 s
e2	**Flash shutter speed** (pg. 308)	1/60 s
e3	**Flash cntrl for built-in flash** (pg. 309)	TTL
e4	**Modeling flash** (pg. 315)	On
e5	**Auto bracketing set** (pg. 315)	AE & flash
e6	**Auto bracketing (Mode M)** (pg. 316)	Flash/speed
e7	**Bracketing order** (pg. 317)	MTR > under > over

	Option		Default
f1	**switch** (pg. 318)		LCD backlight
f2	**Multi selector center button** (pg. 318)		
		Shooting mode	Select center focus point
		Playback mode	Thumbnail on/off
f3	**Multi selector** (pg. 319)		Do nothing
f4	**Photo info/playback** (pg. 320)		Info /Playback
f5	**Assign FUNC. button** (pg. 320)		
		FUNC. button press	None
		FUNC. button+dials	Auto bracketing
f6	**Assign preview button** (pg. 324)		
		Preview button press	Preview
		Preview+command dials	None
f7	**Assign AE-L/AF-L button** (pg. 325)		
		AE-L/AF-L button press	AE/AF lock
		AE-L/AF-L+command dials	None
f8	**Shutter spd & aperture lock** (pg. 326)		
		Shutter speed lock	Off
		Aperture lock	Off
f9	**Customize command dials** (pg. 326)		
		Reverse rotation (pg. 326)	No
		Change main/sub (pg. 326)	Off
		Aperture setting (pg. 327)	Sub-command dial
		Menus and playback (pg. 327)	Off
f10	**Release button to use dial** (pg. 328)		No
f11	**No memory card?** (pg. 329)		Enable release
f12	**Reverse indicators** (pg. 330)		

Memory Card Capacity

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 2 GB SanDisk Extreme IV (SDCFX4) card at different image quality, image size, and image area settings.

■■ *FX Format (36 × 24) Image Area*[1]

Image quality	Image size	File size[2]	No. of images[2]	Buffer capacity[3]
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 12-bit	—	13.3 MB	100	23
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 14-bit	—	16.3 MB	77	20
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 12-bit	—	11.0 MB	138	26
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 14-bit	—	13.8 MB	114	23
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 12-bit	—	18.8 MB	100	19
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 14-bit	—	24.7 MB	77	17
TIFF (RGB)	L	35.9 MB	53	17
	M	20.7 MB	95	20
	S	10.0 MB	211	28
JPEG fine[4]	L	5.7 MB	279	100
	M	3.2 MB	496	100
	S	1.4 MB	1000	100
JPEG normal[4]	L	2.9 MB	548	100
	M	1.6 MB	976	100
	S	0.7 MB	2000	100
JPEG basic[4]	L	1.4 MB	1000	100
	M	0.8 MB	1800	100
	S	0.4 MB	3900	100

■■ DX Format (24 × 16) Image Area [1]

Image quality	Image size	File size [2]	No. of images [2]	Buffer capacity [3]
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 12-bit	—	5.7 MB	229	65
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 14-bit	—	7.0 MB	177	46
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 12-bit	—	4.7 MB	312	95
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 14-bit	—	6.0 MB	260	63
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 12-bit	—	8.1 MB	229	39
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 14-bit	—	10.7 MB	177	31
TIFF (RGB)	L	15.3 MB	124	23
	M	8.8 MB	220	29
	S	4.3 MB	480	59
JPEG fine [4]	L	2.5 MB	637	100
	M	1.4 MB	1100	100
	S	0.6 MB	2400	100
JPEG normal [4]	L	1.2 MB	1200	100
	M	0.7 MB	2000	100
	S	0.3 MB	4400	100
JPEG basic [4]	L	0.6 MB	2400	100
	M	0.3 MB	3900	100
	S	0.2 MB	7800	100

1 If **Auto DX crop** is selected for **Image area**, DX-format images will be recorded with DX lenses, FX-format images with other lenses.

2 All figures are approximate. File size varies with scene recorded.

3 Maximum number of exposures that can be stored in memory buffer. Drops if **Optimal quality** is selected for **JPEG compression**, ISO sensitivity is set to H 0.3 or higher, **High ISO NR** is on when auto ISO sensitivity control is on or ISO sensitivity is set to 2000 or higher, or long exposure noise reduction, active D-lighting, or image authentication is on.

4 Figures assume **JPEG compression** is set to **Size priority**. Selecting **Optimal quality** increases the file size of JPEG images; number of images and buffer capacity drop accordingly.

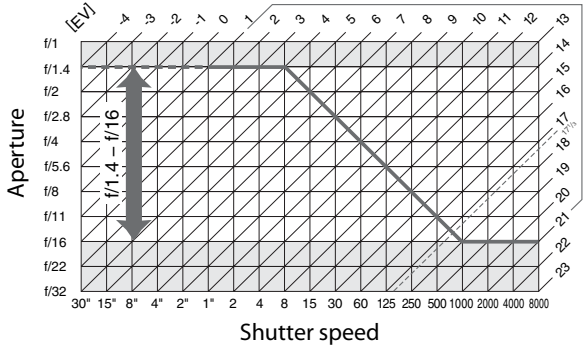
d5—Max. Continuous Release (pg. 299)

The maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst can be set to any amount between 1 and 100.

Exposure Program

The exposure program for programmed auto is shown in the following graph:

ISO 200; lens with maximum aperture of f/1.4 and minimum aperture of f/16 (e.g., AF 50mm f/1.4 D)



The maximum and minimum values for EV vary with ISO sensitivity; the above graph assumes an ISO sensitivity of ISO 200 equivalent. When matrix metering is used, values over 17 1/3 EV are reduced to 17 1/3 EV.

Aperture, Sensitivity, and Flash Range

The range of the built-in flash varies with sensitivity (ISO equivalency) and aperture.

Aperture at ISO equivalent of						Range	
200	400	800	1600	3200	6400	m	ft.
1.4	2	2.8	4	5.6	8	1.0–8.5	3ft. 3in.–27ft. 11in.
2	2.8	4	5.6	8	11	0.7–6.1	2ft. 4in.–20ft.
2.8	4	5.6	8	11	16	0.6–4.2	2ft.–13ft. 9in.
4	5.6	8	11	16	22	0.6–3.0	2ft.–9ft. 10in.
5.6	8	11	16	22	32	0.6–2.1	2ft.–6ft. 11in.
8	11	16	22	32	—	0.6–1.5	2ft.–4ft. 11in.
11	16	22	32	—	—	0.6–1.1	2ft.–3ft. 7in.
16	22	32	—	—	—	0.6–0.8	2ft.–2ft. 7in.

The built-in flash has a minimum range of 0.6 m (2 ft.).

In programmed auto exposure mode (mode **P**), the maximum aperture (minimum f-number) is limited according to ISO sensitivity, as shown below:

Maximum aperture at ISO equivalent of:					
200	400	800	1600	3200	6400
3.5	4	5	5.6	7.1	8

For each one-step increase in sensitivity (e.g., from 200 to 400), aperture is stopped down by half an f-stop. If the maximum aperture of the lens is smaller than given above, the maximum value for aperture will be the maximum aperture of the lens.

Specifications

■■ *Nikon D700 Digital Camera*

Type	
Type	Single-lens reflex digital camera
Lens mount	Nikon F mount (with AF coupling and AF contacts)
Effective pixels	
Effective pixels	12.1 million
Image sensor	
Image sensor	36.0 × 23.9 mm CMOS sensor (Nikon FX format)
Total pixels	12.87 million
Dust-reduction system	Image sensor cleaning, Image Dust Off reference data (optional Capture NX 2 software required)
Storage	
Image size (pixels)	• **FX format (36 × 24) image area** 4,256 × 2,832 (L) 3,184 × 2,120 (M) 2,128 × 1,416 (S) • **DX format (24 × 16) image area** 2,784 × 1,848 (L) 2,080 × 1,384 (M) 1,392 × 920 (S)
File format	• **NEF (RAW)**: 12 or 14 bit, lossless compressed, compressed, or uncompressed • **TIFF (RGB)** • **JPEG**: JPEG-Baseline compliant with fine (approx. 1 : 4), normal (approx. 1 : 8), or basic (approx. 1 : 16) compression (**Size priority**); **Optimal quality** compression available • **NEF (RAW)+JPEG**: Single photograph recorded in both NEF (RAW) and JPEG formats
Picture Control System	Can be selected from Standard, Neutral, Vivid, Monochrome; storage for up to nine custom Picture Controls
Media	Type I CompactFlash memory cards (UDMA compliant)
File system	DCF (**D**esign Rule for **C**amera **F**ile System) 2.0, DPOF (**D**igital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat), Exif 2.21 (**Ex**changeable **I**mage **F**ile Format for Digital Still Cameras), PictBridge

Viewfinder	
Viewfinder	Eye-level pentaprism single-lens reflex viewfinder
Frame coverage	Approx. 95% horizontal and 95% vertical
Magnification	Approx. 0.72 × (50-mm f/1.4 lens at infinity, –1.0 m^{-1})
Eyepoint	18 mm (–1.0 m^{-1})
Diopter adjustment	–3–+1 m^{-1}
Focusing screen	Ships with type B BriteView Clear Matte Mark VI screen with AF area brackets (framing grid can be displayed)
Reflex mirror	Quick return
Depth-of-field preview	When depth of field preview button is pressed, lens aperture is stopped down to value selected by user (**A** and **M** modes) or by camera (**P** and **S** modes)
Lens aperture	Instant return, electronically controlled
Lens	
Compatible lenses	• **DX AF Nikkor**: All functions supported • **Type G or D AF Nikkor**: All functions supported (PC Micro-Nikkor does not support some functions). IX Nikkor lenses not supported. • **Other AF Nikkor**: All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II. Lenses for F3AF not supported. • **AI-P Nikkor**: All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II • **Non-CPU**: Can be used in exposure modes **A** and **M**; electronic rangefinder can be used if maximum aperture is f/5.6 or faster; color matrix metering and aperture value display supported if user provides lens data (AI lenses only)
Shutter	
Type	Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter
Speed	$^1/_{8000}$ – 30 s in steps of $^1/_3$, $^1/_2$, or 1 EV, bulb, X250
Flash sync speed	X=$^1/_{250}$ s; synchronizes with shutter at $^1/_{320}$ s or slower (flash range drops at speeds between $^1/_{250}$ and $^1/_{320}$ s)
Release	
Release mode	**S** (single frame), **CL** (continuous low speed), **CH** (continuous high speed), Lv (live view), ⏲ (self-timer), **MUP** (mirror up)

Release	
Frame advance rate	• **With EN-EL3e**: From 1 to up to 5 fps (**CL**); up to 5 fps (**CH**) • **With optional MB-D10 multi-power battery pack and EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 or AA batteries or with optional EH-5a/EH-5 AC adapter**: From 1 to up to 7 fps (**CL**); up to 8 fps (**CH**)
Self-timer	Can be selected from 2, 5, 10, and 20 s duration

Exposure	
Metering	TTL exposure metering using 1,005-segment RGB sensor
Metering method	• **Matrix**: 3D color matrix metering II (type G and D lenses); color matrix metering II (other CPU lenses); color matrix metering available with non-CPU lenses if user provides lens data • **Center-weighted**: Weight of 75% given to 8, 12, 15, or 20-mm circle in center of frame, or weighting based on average of entire frame (non-CPU lenses use 12-mm circle or average of entire frame) • **Spot**: Meters 4-mm circle (about 1.5% of frame) centered on selected focus point (on center focus point when non-CPU lens is used)
Range (ISO 100, f/1.4 lens, 20 °C/68 °F)	• **Matrix or center-weighted metering**: 0–20 EV • **Spot metering**: 2–20 EV
Exposure meter coupling	Combined CPU and AI
Exposure mode	Programmed auto with flexible program (**P**); shutter-priority auto (**S**); aperture priority auto (**A**); manual (**M**)
Exposure compensation	–5 – +5 EV in increments of 1/3, 1/2, or 1 EV
Exposure bracketing	2–9 frames in steps of 1/3, 1/2, 2/3, or 1 EV
Flash bracketing	2–9 frames in steps of 1/3, 1/2, 2/3, or 1 EV
White balance bracketing	2–9 frames in steps of 1, 2, or 3
Exposure lock	Luminosity locked at detected value with **AE-L/AF-L** button

Exposure	
ISO sensitivity (Recommended Exposure Index)	ISO 200 – 6400 in steps of 1/3, 1/2, or 1 EV. Can also be set to approx. 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, or 1 EV (ISO 100 equivalent) below ISO 200 or to approx. 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 1 EV, or 2 EV (ISO 25600 equivalent) above ISO 6400.
Active D-Lighting	Can be selected from **Auto**, **High**, **Normal**, or **Low**
Focus	
Autofocus	Nikon Multi-CAM 3500FX autofocus module with TTL phase detection, fine-tuning, 51 focus points (including 15 cross-type sensors), and AF-assist illuminator (range approx. 0.5–3 m/1 ft. 8 in.–9 ft. 10 in.)
Detection range	–1 – +19 EV (ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F)
Lens servo	• **Autofocus**: Single-servo AF (**S**); continuous-servo AF (**C**); predictive focus tracking automatically activated according to subject status • **Manual** (**M**): Electronic range finding supported
Focus point	Can be selected from 51 or 11 focus points
AF-area mode	Single-point AF, dynamic-area AF, auto-area AF
Focus lock	Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button halfway (single-servo AF) or by pressing **AE-L/AF-L** button
Flash	
Built-in flash	Manual pop-up with button release and a Guide Number of 17/56 (m/ft, ISO 200, 20 °C/68 °F; GN at ISO 100 is 12/39) or 18/59 in manual mode (m/ft, ISO 200, 20 °C/68 °F; GN at ISO 100 is 13/43)

Flash	
Flash control	• **TTL**: i-TTL balanced fill-flash and standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR using 1,005-segment RGB sensor are available with built-in flash and SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-400 • **Auto aperture**: Available with SB-900, SB-800 and CPU lens • **Non-TTL auto**: Supported flash units include SB-900, SB-800, SB-28, SB-27, and SB-22s • **Distance-priority manual**: Available with SB-900 and SB-800
Flash mode	Front curtain sync, slow sync, rear-curtain sync, red-eye reduction, red-eye reduction with slow sync
Flash compensation	–3 – +1 EV in increments of $^1/_3$, $^1/_2$, or 1 EV
Flash-ready indicator	Lights when built-in flash or Speedlight such as SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-80DX, SB-28DX, or SB-50DX is fully charged; blinks after flash is fired at full output
Accessory shoe	Standard ISO 518 hot-shoe contact with safety lock
Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)	Advanced Wireless Lighting supported with built-in flash, SB-900, SB-800, or SU-800 as commander and SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 as remotes; Auto FP High-Speed Sync and modeling illumination supported with all CLS-compatible flash units except SB-400; Flash Color Information Communication and FV lock supported with all CLS-compatible flash units
Sync terminal	Standard ISO 519 terminal
White balance	
White balance	Auto (TTL white-balance with main image sensor and 1,005 segment RGB sensor); 7 manual modes with fine-tuning; color temperature setting
Live view	
Modes	Hand-held, tripod
Autofocus	• **Hand-held**: Phase-detection AF with 51 focus points (including 15 cross-type sensors) • **Tripod**: Contrast-detect AF anywhere in frame

Monitor	
Monitor	3-in., 920k-dot (VGA), low-temperature polysilicon TFT LCD with 170 ° viewing angle, 100% frame coverage, and brightness adjustment
Playback	
Playback	Full-frame and thumbnail (four or nine images) playback with playback zoom, slide show, highlights, histogram display, auto image rotation, and image comment (up to 36 characters)
Interface	
USB	Hi-Speed USB
Video output	Can be selected from NTSC and PAL
HDMI output	Type C mini-pin HDMI connector; camera monitor turns off when HDMI cable is connected
Ten-pin remote terminal	Can be used to connect remote control or GPS device compliant with NMEA0183 version 2.01 or 3.01 (requires optional MC-35 GPS adapter cord and cable with D-sub 9-pin connector)
Supported languages	
Supported languages	Chinese (Simplified and Traditional), Dutch, English, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish
Power source	
Battery	One rechargeable Li-ion EN-EL3e battery
Battery pack	Optional MB-D10 multi-power battery pack with one rechargeable Nikon EN-EL3e, EN-EL4a, or EN-EL4 Li-ion battery or eight AA alkaline, NiMH, lithium, or nickel-manganese batteries; EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 and AA batteries available separately; A BL-3 battery-chamber cover is required when using EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 batteries.
AC adapter	EH-5a or EH-5 AC adapter (available separately)
Tripod socket	
Tripod socket	1/4 in. (ISO 1222)

Dimensions/weight	
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 147 × 123 × 77 mm (5.8 × 4.8 × 3.0 in.)
Weight	Approx. 995 g (2.19 lb.) without battery, memory card, body cap, or monitor cover
Operating environment	
Temperature	0–40 °C (32–104 °F)
Humidity	Less than 85% (no condensation)

- Unless otherwise stated, all figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery operating at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.

MH-18a quick charger	
Rated input	AC 100–240 V (50/60 Hz)
Rated output	DC 8.4 V/900 mA
Supported batteries	Nikon EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion battery
Charging time	Approx. 2 hours and 15 minutes when battery is fully discharged
Operating temperature	0–40 °C (+32–104 °F)
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 90 × 35 × 58 mm (3.5 × 1.4 × 2.3 in.)
Length of cord	Approx. 1800 mm (5 ft. 11 in.)
Weight	Approx. 80 g (2.8 oz.), excluding power cable
EN-EL3e rechargeable Li-ion battery	
Type	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
Rated capacity	7.4 V/1500 mAh
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 39.5 × 56 × 21 mm (1.6 × 2.2 × 0.8 in.)
Weight	Approx. 80 g (2.8 oz.), excluding terminal cover

Supported Standards

- **DCF Version 2.0**: The **D**esign Rule for **C**amera **F**ile System (DCF) is a standard widely used in the digital camera industry to ensure compatibility among different makes of camera.
- **DPOF**: **D**igital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat (DPOF) is an industry-wide standard that allows pictures to be printed from print orders stored on the memory card.
- **Exif version 2.21**: The camera supports Exif (**Ex**changeable **I**mage **F**ile Format for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.21, a standard in which information stored with photographs is used for optimal color reproduction when the images are output on Exif-compliant printers.
- **PictBridge**: A standard developed through cooperation with the digital camera and printer industries, allowing photographs to be output directly to a printer without first transferring them to a computer.
- **HDMI**: **H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface is a standard for multimedia interfaces used in consumer electronics and AV devices capable of transmitting audiovisual data and control signals to HDMI-compliant devices via a single cable connection (the camera uses a type C mini-pin connector).

Battery Life

The number of shots that can be taken with fully-charged batteries varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, and how the camera is used. In the case of AA batteries, capacity also varies with make and storage conditions; some batteries can not be used. Sample figures for the camera and optional MB-D10 multi-power battery pack are given below.

- **CIPA standard** [1]
  One EN-EL3e battery (camera): Approximately 1000 shots
  One EN-EL3e battery (MB-D10): Approximately 1000 shots
  One EN-EL4a battery (MB-D10): Approximately 1900 shots
  Eight AA batteries (MB-D10): Approximately 700 shots
- **Nikon standard** [2]
  One EN-EL3e battery (camera): Approximately 2500 shots
  One EN-EL3e battery (MB-D10): Approximately 2500 shots
  One EN-EL4a battery (MB-D10): Approximately 4300shots
  Eight AA batteries (MB-D10): Approximately 1000 shots

1 Measured at 23 °C/73.4 °F (±2 °C/3.6 °F) with an AF-S VR 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G ED lens under the following test conditions: lens cycled from infinity to minimum range and one photograph taken at default settings once every 30 s; flash fired once every other shot. Live view not used.

2 Measured at 20 °C/68 °F with an AF-S VR 70–200mm f/2.8G ED lens under the following test conditions: image quality set to JPEG basic, image size set to **M** (medium), shutter speed $^1/_{250}$ s, shutter-release button pressed halfway for three seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range three times; six shots are then taken in succession and monitor turned on for five seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

The following can reduce battery life:
- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds
- Using the optional WT-4 wireless transmitter
- Using VR (vibration reduction) mode with VR lenses

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL3e batteries:
- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soiled contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.

Index

Menu items and options in the camera monitor are shown in bold.

Symbols
☀ **Switch**, 318
[▫] (Single-point AF), 74, 75
[▫](Dynamic-area AF), 74, 75, 285
[▣](Auto-area AF), 74, 75
S, 84
CL, 84, 86, 91, 299
CH, 84, 86
[LV], 89
⏲ (Self-timer), 102
MUP, 104
[▣] (Matrix), 112, 113, 295
[◉] (Center-weighted), 112, 294, 295
[•] (Spot), 112, 295
P (Programmed auto), 116
S (Shutter-priority auto), 118
A (Aperture-priority auto), 119
M (Manual), 121
? (Help), 26, 31
(Memory buffer), 53
PRE (Preset manual), 141, 148

Numerics
1,005-segment RGB sensor, 140
3D color matrix metering II, 113
3D-tracking, 74, 75, 286

A
AC adapter, 385
Accessories, 385
Active D-Lighting, 179
Active folder, 272
AE-L, 79, 126, 325
AF, 72, 74, 76, 80
AF activation, 287
AF area brackets, 45, 94
AF assist, 53, 290, 375
AF fine tune, 347
AF point illumination, 288
AF point selection, 289
AF-area mode, 74
  auto-area AF, 74, 75
  dynamic-area AF, 74, 75, 285
  single-point AF, 74, 75
AF-C priority selection, 283
AF-ON button, 73, 96, 287, 291
AF-On for MB-D10, 291
AF-S priority selection, 284
After delete, 265
A-M switch, 36
Amber, 144, 358
Aperture, 119–122
  maximum, 82, 210
  minimum, 37, 114
Aperture-priority auto, 119
Assign AE-L/AF-L button, 325
Assign FUNC. button, 320
Assign preview button, 324
Auto bracketing, 130, 315, 316
Auto bracketing (Mode M), 316
Auto bracketing set, 315
  AE & flash, 315
  AE only, 315
  Flash only, 315
  WB bracketing, 315
Auto DX Crop, 58
Auto FP high-speed sync., 305, 306, 377
Auto image rotation, 336
Auto meter off, 48, 296
Auto meter-off delay, 296
Auto-area AF, 74, 75
Autofocus, 72, 74, 76, 78, 80

B
Backlight, 48, 302
Battery, 32, 34, 46, 302, 304, 340
  charging, 32
  pack, 302, 304, 341, 385
Battery info, 340
Battery order, 304
Beep, 298
Body cap, 5, 36, 388
Bracketing, 130, 315, 316
  exposure, 130, 315, 316
  flash, 130, 315, 316
  white balance, 130, 135

Bracketing order, 317
Built-in AF-assist illuminator, 290
Bulb, 122, 124
Burst, 200, 299, 321

C

C, 72, 79, 283, 285
Camera Control Pro 2, 239, 388
Capture NX 2, 64, 172, 337, 388
Center-weighted, 112, 294, 295
Center-weighted area, 294
CL mode shooting speed, 299
Clean image sensor, 392
Clock, 39, 334
  battery, 40
CLS, 377
Color balance, 358
Color space, 181
  Adobe RGB, 181
  sRGB, 181
Color temperature, 141, 142, 147
CompactFlash, 41, 332, 390
Computer, 238
Control panel, 8
Copyright information, 343
CPU lens, 37, 370
Creative Lighting System, 377
Custom setting bank, 282
Custom Settings, 280
Customize command dials, 326

D

Date and time, 39, 334
Daylight saving time, 39, 334
DCF version 2.0, 182, 435
Default settings, 196, 271, 282, 418
  restoring, 196, 271, 282
Delete, 56, 236, 262
  all images, 262
  current image, 56, 236
  selected images, 262
Delete, 262
  All, 262
  Selected, 262
Depth-of-field, 115
Depth-of-field preview button, 115, 315, 324
Digital Print Order Format, 243, 249, 253, 435
Diopter, 45, 386
  adjustment control, 45
Display mode, 264
D-Lighting, 354
DPOF, 243, 249, 253, 435
Dust off ref photo, 337
DX format (24x16), 59
Dynamic AF area, 285
  51 points (3D-tracking), 286
Dynamic-area AF, 74, 75, 285

E

Easy exposure compensation, 293
Electronic analog exposure display, 123
Ethernet, 242, 385
EV steps for exposure cntrl., 292
Exif version 2.21, 182, 435
Exp comp/fine tune, 292
Exposure, 111, 112, 126, 128
  lock, 126
  meters, 48, 296
  mode, 114
    aperture-priority auto, 119
    manual, 121
    programmed auto, 116
    shutter-priority auto, 118
  program, 426
Exposure bracketing, 130, 315, 316
Exposure compensation, 128
Exposure delay mode, 302
Eyepiece shutter lever, 45, 102, 205

F

File information, 221
File naming, 274
File number sequence, 300
Filter effects, 358
  Skylight, 358
  Warm filter, 358
Fine tune optimal exposure, 294
Firmware version, 348
Flash, 185, 188, 190, 192
  bracketing, 130, 315, 316
  compensation, 190
  control, 184, 377
    i-TTL balanced-fill flash for digital SLR, 184, 377
    standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR, 184
  mode, 188

modeling, 115, 315
monitor pre-flash, 184, 193
range, 307, 427
ready indicator, 103, 185, 193
sync speed, 118, 305, 306
sync terminal, 384
Flash cntrl for built-in flash, 309
Commander mode, 311
Manual, 310
Repeating flash, 310
Flash shutter speed, 308
Flash sync speed, 305
Flexible program, 117
Fn button, 62, 131, 135, 193, 212, 320
f-number, 119, 120, 371
Focal length, 210, 374
Focal length scale, 37
Focal plane mark, 82
Focus, 71, 72, 74, 76, 78, 81
autofocus, 72, 74, 76, 80
contrast-detect, 90, 98
phase-detection, 90
electronic rangefinder, 82, 370, 372
indicator, 53, 82
lock, 78
mode, 72
continuous-servo AF, 72, 79, 283, 285
manual, 72, 81, 94
single-servo AF, 72, 78, 284
point, 74, 76, 97, 264, 285, 289
contrast-detect, 97
tracking, 73, 286, 287
3D, 74, 286
predictive, 72, 73
Focus point wrap-around, 288
Focus tracking with lock-on, 287
Focusing screen, 429
Format, 43, 332
Format memory card, 332
Front-curtain sync, 188
FV lock, 192
FX format (36x24), 59

G

GPS, 213, 229
connecting, 213
data, 214, 229
GPS, 213
GPS data, 229

H

HDMI, 257, 435
HDMI, 333
Help, 26, 31
HI, 107
Hide image, 263
High definition, 257, 333, 435
High ISO NR, 278
Highlights, 222, 264
Histogram, 223, 224, 264

I

Image area, 58, 69
Image area, 58, 61
Auto DX crop, 58, 61
Choose image area, 59, 61
FX format (36x24), 59
Image authentication, 342
Image comment, 335
Image Dust Off, 337
Image file, 435
Image overlay, 359
Image quality, 58
Image quality, 64
Image review, 264
Image size, 69
Image size, 69
Index print, 252
In-focus indicator, 53, 72
Information, 220, 264
Interval timer shooting, 203
Interval timer shooting, 203
ISO sensitivity, 105, 106, 108
ISO sensitivity settings, 107
ISO sensitivity, 107
ISO sensitivity auto control, 108
Maximum sensitivity, 108
Minimum shutter speed, 108
ISO sensitivity step value, 292
i-TTL, 184, 185, 311, 377

J

JPEG, 64, 67
JPEG basic, 64

JPEG compression, 67
Optimal quality, 67
Size priority, 67
JPEG fine, 64
JPEG normal, 64

L

L, 69
LAN, 385
Language, 38, 334
LCD, 48, 302, 332
LCD brightness, 332
LCD illumination, 302
Lens, 36, 210, 346, 347, 370
attaching, 36
cap, 37
cap, rear, 36, 37
compatible, 370
CPU, 37, 373
distance information, 184
focus mode switch, 36, 37
focus ring, 37, 81
mounting index, 37
non-CPU, 210
data, 211
removing, 37
Lens mount, 5, 82
Live view, 89–101
Live view, 89
Live view mode, 90
Hand-held, 90
Tripod, 90
Release mode, 91
Lo, 107
Local area network, 385
Lock mirror up for cleaning, 395
Long exp. NR, 277

M

M, 72, 81, 94, 121
M (medium), 69
Magenta, 144, 358
Manage Picture Control, 168
Manual, 72, 81, 94, 121
Matrix, 112, 113, 295
Max. continuous release, 299
MB-D10, 291, 302, 304, 341, 385
MB-D10 battery type, 302
Memory buffer, 53, 84, 87, 88
Memory card, 41, 332, 390
capacity of, 423
formatting, 43, 332
Metering, 112
center-weighted, 112, 294, 295
matrix, 112, 113, 295
selector, 51, 113
spot, 112, 295
Mired, 145
Mirror, 89, 104, 395
lock up for cleaning, 395
Modeling flash, 315
Monitor, 12, 55, 89, 218, 332
cover, 21
Monitor off delay, 297
Monochrome, 357
Black-and-white, 357
Cyanotype, 357
Sepia, 357
Mounting index, 37
Multi selector, 319
Multi selector center button, 318
Multiple exposure, 198
Multiple exposure, 198
My Menu, 364
Add items, 364
Rank items, 367
Remove items, 366

N

NEF, 64, 67
NEF (RAW), 64, 68
NEF (RAW) recording, 67
NEF (RAW) bit depth, 68
12-bit, 68
14-bit, 68
Type, 67
Compressed, 67
Lossless compressed, 67
Uncompressed], 67
Nikon Transfer, 238
No memory card?, 329
Non-CPU lens data, 210

O

Optional flash, 309, 320
Overview data, 230

P

Photo info, 220, 264

Photo info/playback, 320
PictBridge, 244, 435
Picture angle, 58, 376
Picture Controls, 160
Playback, 55, 217
  folder, 263
  full-frame, 218
  information, 220, 264
  menu, 260
  slide show, 266
  thumbnail, 232
  zoom, 234
Playback folder, 263
Predictive, 73
Print (DPOF), 249
  Border, 251
  Page size, 251
  Start printing, 251
  Time stamp, 251
Print options (PictBridge **Setup** menu), 247
  Border, 247
  Cropping, 248
  No. of copies, 247
  Page size, 247
  Start printing, 248
  Time stamp, 247
Print select, 249
  Border, 251
  Page size, 251
  Start printing, 251
  Time stamp, 251
Print set (DPOF), 243
Printing, 243
Programmed auto, 116
Protecting photographs, 235

R

Rear-curtain sync, 189
Recent settings, 368
Red-eye correction, 355
Red-eye reduction, 188
Release button to use dial, 328
Release mode, 83, 91
  continuous, 84, 86, 91
    high speed, 84, 86
    low speed, 84, 86, 91, 299
  dial, 85
    lock release, 85
  live view, 89
  mirror up, 104
  self-timer, 102
  single-frame, 84
Remote cord, 101, 104, 389
Reset, 196, 271, 282, 418
Reset custom settings, 282
Reset shooting menu, 271
Reverse indicators, 330
RGB, 64, 181, 222, 223
RGB Histogram, 223, 264
Rotate tall, 265

S

S (small), 69
Save/load settings, 344
Saving camera settings, 344
Self-timer delay, 297
Sensitivity, 105, 106, 108
Set Picture Control, 162
  Monochrome, 162
    Filter effects, 165, 167
    Toning, 165, 167
  Neutral, 162
  Standard, 162
  Vivid, 162
Setup menu, 331
Shooting data, 225, 226, 227, 228
Shooting info display, 12, 301
Shooting info display, 301
Shooting menu, 268
Shooting menu bank, 269
Shutter spd & aperture lock, 326
Shutter-priority auto, 118
Shutter-release button, 53, 54, 78, 126, 296
  half press, 53, 54, 78, 126
Shutter-release button AE-L, 296
Side-by-side comparison, 362
Single-point AF, 74, 75
Single-servo AF, 72, 78, 284
Size, 69
Slide show, 266
Slide show, 266

Frame interval, 266
Slow sync, 188
Speedlight, 377
Spot, 112, 295
T
Television, 255, 333
Ten-pin remote terminal, 213, 389
Thumbnail, 232
TIFF (RGB), 64
Time, 39, 334
Time exposure, 124
Timer, 102, 203
Trim, 356
Two-button reset, 196
U
USB, 238, 245
  cable, 240, 245
UTC, 39, 215, 229
V
Video, 101, 255, 333
  cable, 255
  mode, 333
Video mode, 333
Viewfinder, 10, 45, 429
  eyepiece, 45, 102, 205
  focus, 45, 81
Viewfinder grid display, 298
ViewNX, 64, 161, 182, 243
Vignette control, 276
Virtual horizon, 99, 322, 346
Virtual horizon, 346
W
WB, 135, 140
White balance, 135, 140
  bracketing, 135
  preset manual, 141, 148
White balance, 140
  Auto, 140
  Choose color temp., 141, 147
  Cloudy, 141
  Direct sunlight, 140
  Flash, 141
  Fluorescent, 140
  Incandescent, 140
  Preset manual, 141, 148
  Shade, 141
Wireless, 242, 385
  network, 242, 385
  transmitter, 242, 385
Wireless transmitter, 242
World time, 39, 334
  Date and time, 39, 334
  Date format, 40, 334
  Daylight saving time, 39, 334
  Time zone, 39, 334
WT-4, 242, 385

Nikon

No reproduction in any form of this manual, in whole or in part (except for brief quotation in critical articles or reviews), may be made without written authorization from NIKON CORPORATION.

NIKON CORPORATION
Fuji Bldg., 2-3 Marunouchi 3-chome,
Chiyoda-ku,Tokyo 100-8331, Japan

© 2008 Nikon Corporation

CE

Printed in Japan
SB8G04(11)
6MB02311-04